



LIBRARIES

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN-MADISON

Lectures on Tibetan religious culture: an intermediate textbook of Tibetan, Part II.

Sopa, Geshe Lhundup

s.l.: s.n., 1972?

<https://digital.library.wisc.edu/1711.dl/UDTUGVREUOJYE8I>

<http://rightsstatements.org/vocab/InC/1.0/>

The libraries provide public access to a wide range of material, including online exhibits, digitized collections, archival finding aids, our catalog, online articles, and a growing range of materials in many media.

When possible, we provide rights information in catalog records, finding aids, and other metadata that accompanies collections or items. However, it is always the user's obligation to evaluate copyright and rights issues in light of their own use.

TB2.001#2

RESERVE COPY - 274 ONLY
DO NOT REMOVE FROM LAB

LECTURES ON TIBETAN RELIGIOUS CULTURE

(An Intermediate Textbook of Tibetan)

Geshe Lhundup Sopa

Department of Indian Studies

University of Wisconsin

Part II

U.W. LABS FOR RECORDED INSTR.



00305331

This work has not been published. It is being distributed to a limited audience for review and comment. It may not be further distributed or reproduced without the written permission of the author.

LESSON TWELVE

PART II

University of Wisconsin-Madison
Laboratories for Recorded Instruction

LESSON TWELVE

VOCABULARY

ལྟོ་མཉམས་པོ་	creature, person, individual	རྒྱུ་པོ་	to tame, to train, to discipline
ཤུམ་ཤུམ་པོ་	physical body (i.e. of a living creature)	ཕྱི་རྒྱུ་ལྟོ་	natural resources; necessities and amenities
ལུས་	burden, responsibility	ལྟོ་ལྟོ་ཤུམ་པོ་	fame
མ་ལྟོ་པོ་	a mere . . .	ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	simulated; counterfeit; fallacious
ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	comfort	ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	pretended
འདྲི་བཞུགས་	to aim at, to aspire to, to strive for	ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	love
ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	from the on	ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	compassion
གཞན་གྱི་ལྟོ་	entirely	ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	child, offspring

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

ཆུང་བཟང་ཆེ་	small, middle, and great
ལྟོ་ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	material wealth
ལྟོ་ལྟོ་	size
འདྲི་བཞུགས་	those gone (going) to an evil destiny; evil destiny
འདྲི་བཞུགས་ལྟོ་	from the point of view of

ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་
 ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་
 ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་
 ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་
 ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་

a long life

in fact; essentially

those gone (going) to a fortunate destiny; fortunate destiny

fire pit; pit of fire

tiresome task

The Vajracchedikā-sūtra is in turn the text on which the
tantras of Trangpa and pa are commentaries. In a general way,
 these teachings are all the basic practices of the śākyā
 as set forth for instance in the Abhisamayālaṅkāra of the
Mañjuśrī. However, the presentation and arrangement
 of the above from the point of view of a small, middle, and
 great individual are a point of departure or manner of
 instruction (upadeśa see 1.4, 2.7) particularly associated
 with tantra. The continued exposition of this subject occupies
 all of PART II, Lessons 11 through 29, of this book.

ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་ (ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་) "completely without"- ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་
 "completely", "absolutely", etc., is constructed only with
 negatives, ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་, ལྔ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་ལྔ་ལོ་, etc.

NOTES

1. ལྷོས་བྱ་མེད་འབྲིང་ཆུང་གསུམ་ - "the small, middle, and great individual"- This classification of individuals from the point of view of their religious aspiration and practice is specifically the teaching of the Bodhipatha-pradipa of Atisa. The Bodhipatha-pradipa is in turn the root-text on which the Lam rims of Tsong kha pa are commentaries. In a general way, these teachings are all the basic practices of the Mahāyāna as set forth for instance in the Abhisamayālamkāra of the Natha Maitreya. However, the presentation and arrangement of the above from the point of view of a small, middle, and great individual are a point of departure or manner of instruction (upadesa see n.4, L. 7) particularly associated with Atisa. The continued exposition of this subject occupies all of PART II, Lessons 11 through 22, of this book.
2. གཏན་ནས་ (མེད་པར་) "completely without"- གཏན་ནས་ , "completely", "absolutely", etc., is constructed only with negatives, མེད་པ་ , མ་ཡིན་པ་ , མ་རེད་ . etc.

TRANSLATION

- I. How does one distinguish the so-called small, middle, and great individual within the Buddhist religion?
- G. The so-called small, middle, and great individual is not distinguished according to a small or great physical stature, or small or great wealth, or small or great position in the world, etc., by any of these. How then? Rather he is categorized according to the small or great burden of his thought or the stature of his mind from the point of view of its religious direction. From the point of view of this, all persons are included in the three, the small, middle, and great individual. One distinguishes both a special and a mere small individual within (the class of) the so-called small individual, and there is also a system of distinguishing him by some as threefold, a small small individual, a middle small, and a superior small. Whence one designates a small individual a person who other than striving chiefly for the happiness and comfort of the present life or in the future just the happiness of the round of existence which is contained in the high condition of (life as) a god or human, does not strive for the condition of all-knowledge or the deliverance which frees from the entire round of existence. Moreover, one who is without any thought of the future-on, other than just the happiness and comfort of the present life only, is the mere small individual, and one who, anxious about the miseries of those going to the three evil destinies in future life, aims at just a high condition (in the world), the state of a god or a human, is called the special small individual. Also, from the point of view of distinguishing a small, middle, and great within the small individual, one designates a small small individual one who entirely without a thought of religion is chiefly a striver for the happiness and comfort of this life span by way of guarding friends and subduing enemies, etc. As for the middle small individual, although there is a semblance of religion, (like) going for refuge to the three Jewels, worship, donation, etc., whereby, except for making an effort chiefly for just the present life, (i.e.) the food, drink, material resources, happiness and comfort, good name, long life, etc. of this life, there is no acting principally for the objectives of the future life; hence he is called the middle small individual. Therefore, although the middle small individual performs a simulated practice of the doctrine, going for refuge etc., since essentially it goes for the purpose of only this life, rather than a mere semblance of the doctrine, it does not

go to the pure doctrine. One designates as the superior small individual those persons who, (seeing) the present life does not last long and having obtained faith in the action-result of virtue and non-virtue, are apprehensive and anxious on account of the uncertainty of taking birth in evil destinies in future life, and so strive chiefly for a high condition, the state of a human or a god, and for the purpose of this go to the Jewels for refuge and strive principally for achieving virtue and avoiding vice. Therefore, the superior small individual, even though anxious and apprehensive on seeing as objectionable the misery of those in evil destinies, without perceiving as objectionable, birth in a fortunate destiny which is contained in the round of existence, he perceives its virtues, and making this the foremost of objectives, he strives for this; therefore, once he perceives one part of the round of existence as an objectionable and another part as a benefit, he does not strive for the deliverance which frees from the entire round of existences.

The so-called middle individual is superior also to the best small individual from the point of view of his thinking. The reason is that one designates as the middle individual a person who, without being merely anxious on seeing as objectionable only the misery of those in evil destinies, perceives as objectionable also, the happiness and comfort of the high condition of a human or a deity which is contained in the round of existence, and so perceiving the nature of misery in the entire round of existence as a place productive of fear as is a pit of fire, he strives principally for only a deliverance which frees himself alone from the entire round of existence. The so-called great individual is quite superior to the middle individual also in his way of thinking. The reason is that the great individual without such striving primarily for the peace and happiness of delivering himself alone from the misery of the round of existence like the middle individual, the great individual practises the thought of love and compassion to all living creatures, - and just as in the world good and kind parents cherish their own offspring and forsaking their own aims take on the responsibility of many hundreds of irksome tasks for the sake of their children, - the great individual also forsakes the peace and happiness of himself alone and makes the others much dearer than himself; the person who has the superior thought of assuming the responsibility of a means for clearing away the ills and accomplishing the happiness of the others is designated the great individual.

LESSON THIRTEEN

༡༣། རྩེས་ཀྱི་གསུམ་པོ་མོའི་ཉམས་སྲུ་ལེན་པ་གི་ལམ་གྱི་གཙོ་བོ་ལ་མི་འདྲ་
བ་ག་རེ་ཡོད་དམ།

རྩེས་ཀྱི་གསུམ་པོ་དེའི་དོན་ཏུ་གཉེན་རྒྱུ་འི་གཙོ་བོ་འམ། འདོད་བྱའི་རྩེ་བ་ལ་བྱུང་བར་
ཚོན་པོ་ཡོད་པ་ལས་བཞིན། དེ་ཚོ་འཚོ་བ་བྱེད་ཀྱི་མཁས་ཉམས་སྲུ་ལེན་པ་གི་གཙོ་བོ་ལ་

ཡང་བྱུང་བར་གང་འཚོ་མས་ཡོད་པ་རེད། དཔེར་ན། རྩེས་ཀྱི་རྩུང་ཏུ་རྩུབ་པ་མ་ཚོན་
བ་རྩེས་ཀྱི་རྩུང་ཏུ་ལ་བཅད་གསེས་ཀྱི་ཚིམ་པོ་བ་དང་། བྱུང་བར་ཚབ་མེད་བ་གཉིས་ཡོད་

ཅུང་། རྩེས་ཀྱི་གསུམ་པོ་ལམ་ཉམས་སྲུ་ལེན་ཚུལ་དོས་འདོན་པའི་ཤུགས་སྲུ་ རྩེས་
ཀྱི་རྩུང་ཏུ་བྱུང་བར་ཚབ་ཀྱི་ལམ་ལས་དོས་འདོན་གྱི་དགོས་། ཚིམ་པོ་བཞི་ཚོ་བུ་རྩུས་

པ་རྩུང་ཚོ་འདི་ལྟར་ཚིམ་ཀྱི་བྱུང་བས་ལྟུ་མའི་ཚེད་ཏུ་བྱུང་མི་བྱུང་བ་ཡོན་ཚང་། ཚོས་
ཉམས་སྲུ་ལེན་པའི་ཤུགས་སྲུ་འགྲོ་གི་ཡོད་པ་མ་རེད། འདི་འདྲས་ཡོན་ཚང་། རྩེས་ཀྱི་

རྩུང་ཏུ་བྱུང་བར་ཚབ་ཀྱི་ཤུགས་སྲུ་འཚུངས་ཚེ་འདིའི་རྩེ་གོས་གཏམ་གསུམ་ལ་
མོགས་པའི་བདེ་རྩིད་ལ་འདྲ་ལྟར་བྱུང་མའི་དོན་ལ་གཙོ་བོར་རྩུབ་དང་། དེ་ཡང་

ལྱིམ་པམ་ཚོད་གསུམ་ཏུ་རྩེ་བ་ལ་འདྲི་གས་ལས་མ་དོན་མ་ཚོན་དང་མའི་གོ་འཕང་ཚིམ་
ཞིག་གཙོ་བོར་དོན་ཏུ་གཉེན་མ་འཕམ་ཞིག་དགོས་པ་རེད།།

དེ་ཡོན་ཚང་། བོས་བསམ་ལྟོ་བཅད། མོས་བརྒྱབ་ལས་ཉམས་སྲུ་ལེན་པ་གི་གཙོ་བོ་
མི། དང་པོར་དོན་ཚེ་བ་དང་། ཚེད་པར་དགའ་བའི་དལ་འཕྲོད་ལྱིམ་ལུས་འདི་རྩེད་

ཏུ་མི་གལས་པར་འཚི་བར་དེས་པ་དང་། ག་རུས་འཚི་བ་ལ་དེས་པ་མེད་པ། འཚི་
བའི་ཚོ་ཚོས་མ་གཏོགས་གང་གིས་ཅུང་མི་བཅད་པའི་རྩུབ་པས་མ་ཞིང་མོས་དོན་

པ་རེད། དེ་ལས་ཞི་བའི་འོག་ཏུ་གཏམ་མེད་ཏུ་མི་འགྲོ་བར་རྩེ་བ་ཞིག་དེས་པར་ཏུ་
ལེན་དགོས་ལུགས་དང་། རྩེས་དེ་ཡང་དལ་འགྲོ་དང་བདེ་འགྲོ་གཉིས་ལས་མེད་ལུགས་

LESSON THIRTEEN

VOCABULARY

གཏན་མེད་	nothing; nothing- ness	ནུབ་པ་	hell-denizen
འོག་མ་	lower	དང་དམེད་དུ་	without inde- pendence
བཏུལ་པ་	exhortation	བཏུལ་པ་	<u>kalpa</u> , eon
བསྐྱེད་པ་	preparation	ལྗང་པ་	stomach
འགྲོ་བའི་	necessities of life; livelihood	ལྗང་པ་	throat
འགྲོ་བའི་	inn	འགྲོ་བའི་	to use (i.e. ne- cessities and amenities)
བསྐྱེད་པ་	preparation	ལྗང་པ་	pus
འཇིགས་པ་	perception, thought, mental formation	ལྗང་པ་	Saṃjīva
འཇིགས་པ་	imprint, im- pression	ལྗང་པ་	Kala-sūtra
འཇིགས་པ་	elephant	ལྗང་པ་	Saṃghāta
འཇིགས་པ་	animal	ལྗང་པ་	Rāurava
འཇིགས་པ་	footprint	ལྗང་པ་	Mahārāurava
འཇིགས་པ་	distance	ལྗང་པ་	Tāpana
འཇིགས་པ་	when	ལྗང་པ་	Mahātāpana
འཇིགས་པ་	shadow	ལྗང་པ་	Avīci
འཇིགས་པ་	brute, animal	ལྗང་པ་	Arbuda
འཇིགས་པ་	<u>preta</u>	ལྗང་པ་	Nirarbuda
		ལྗང་པ་	Huhuva
		ལྗང་པ་	Hahava

ଅତାତା	Atata
ଉତ୍ପଳା	Utpala
ପଦ୍ମା	Padma
ମହାପଦ୍ମା	Mahāpadma
ଉତ୍ସାଦା	utsada
ପ୍ରାଦେଶିକା	prādeśika
ଦ୍ୱିଗୁଣିତା	to double
ମାଗଧା	Magadha

ସିସମୁମ୍	sesamum
କାଳି	a loose bulk measure Ca. 30 #s
କାଳି	to contain; to fit
କାଳି	a storage bin

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

କାଳି	aim; object of striving
କାଳି	to come into the reckoning of
କାଳି	to be one of the
କାଳି	food, clothes, and fame
କାଳି	wealth and leisure
କାଳି	human body
କାଳି	difficult to find
କାଳି	the head is spinning; going around in circles
କାଳି	future life
କାଳି	huge bodily size
କାଳି	very forceful
କାଳି	again and again
କାଳି	power

ॐ ह्रस्वः प्रकृतः
 प्रकृतः प्रकृतः प्रकृतः
 प्रकृतः प्रकृतः प्रकृतः
 प्रकृतः प्रकृतः प्रकृतः
 प्रकृतः प्रकृतः प्रकृतः
 प्रकृतः प्रकृतः प्रकृतः
 प्रकृतः प्रकृतः प्रकृतः
 प्रकृतः प्रकृतः प्रकृतः

definitely
 to comprehend, to understand
 to come or not
 of eating one another
 food and drink
 blood and pus
 each former
 each latter
 life span; measurement of life

wrong views, or 6. as a savage, or 7. as a mental deficient,
 or 8. as a "long lived god", the last signifying a being born
 in the realm of man perception (Samsara) where it is
 taught that the beings remain for many eons in a completely
 unconscious state. The ten kinds of wealth or richness are
 1. birth as a man, 2. in a central place, 3. with mental and
 sense faculties unobscured, 4. as a person who has not committed
 one of the five most heinous sins, like killing one's parent,
 or an Arhat, etc., 5. as one who has faith in the Tripitaka,
 6. as one who is born in a place where Buddha has appeared,
 7. and where he has taught, and 8. where his teaching survives,
 and 9. where there are people who follow, and 10. where others
 can help out of compassion.

2. *At the time of the small individual*
 etc., is an elliptical expression signifying 'at the time
 of practicing the religious practices of the small individual'.

NOTES

1. ཏལ་འབྲུག་གྱི་མི་ལུས་ - "a human body of wealth and leisure".
 A human body of wealth and leisure signifies not just a human life but a human life endowed with eight kinds of leisure or opportunity and ten kinds of wealth or richness. The eight kinds of leisure or opportunity are freedoms from eight kinds of deprivation of opportunity, i.e. 1.2. and 3., birth among the beings gone to the three evil destinies, hell denizens, pretas, and animals, 4. birth in a place without religious teaching, or 5. where people have completely wrong views, or 6. as a savage, or 7. as a mental deficient, or 8. as a "long lived god", the last signifying a being born in the realm of non perception (འདྲེ་ཤེས་མེད་པ་) where it is taught that the beings remain for many eons in a completely unconscious state. The ten kinds of wealth or richness are 1. birth as a man, 2. in a central place, 3. with mental and sense faculties complete, 4. as a person who has not committed one of the five most nefarious sins, like killing one's parent, or an Arhant, etc., 5. as one who has faith in the Tripitaka, 6. as one who is born in a place where a Buddha has appeared, 7. and where he has taught, and 8. where his teaching survives, and 9. where there are people who follow, and 10. where others can help out of compassion.
2. ལྡན་ལུ་ལྡན་ལུ་འཇིགས་པ་ - "at the time of the small individual" etc., is an elliptical expression signifying 'at the time of practising the religious practices of the small individual'.

The practices of the three individuals are understood as progressive, accomplishment of the practice of the small individual being prerequisite for the practice of the practices of the middle individual, and likewise the accomplishment of the first two is prerequisite for the practice of the practices of the great individual.

3. གོང་མའི་ཉམས་སྤྱི་བྱང་ལྱེ་ལམ་ "the path which is the practice of the higher". i.e., the higher of the three individuals, small, middle, and great. (see note 2 above).
4. ནྐ་ -"when" is a noun meaning "time" and also the interrogative adverb "when".
5. མར་གྱི་ནང་ནས་སྤྱི་བཏོན་པ་ནང་བཞིན་ -"like a hair taken out from the butter". The simile refers to extracting a yak hair from butter made from the milk of the female yak, (འབྲི), for the extraction does not disturb the butter which is left behind wholly intact.
6. ཡི་དྲགས་ "pretas" often translated as "tantalized spirits", "hungry ghosts", etc. are an important class of miserable lives belonging to the round of existences (འཁོར་བ་) according to Buddhist teaching. These are discussed somewhat briefly in the present lesson.

TRANSLATION

- I. What are the differences in the chief paths which are practised by each of the three individuals?
- G. As there is a particularity in the principal aim or main object of desire of the three individuals, there is also much particularity in the principal practice of the way of achieving them. If one takes the small individual for example, - although within (the class of) the small individual there is both a mere and a special (small individual), when one is distinguishing the method of practising the paths of the three individuals, it is necessary to distinguish (them) from the path of the special small individual. The mere (small individual), as said above, since he does not perform action for the sake of future life rather than the action of the mere appearance of this life, does not come into the reckoning of the practice of religion. Therefore, in order to be counted as the special small individual, one has to look chiefly to the objectives of the future life without looking even to the happiness and comfort of this life, food, clothes, reputation, etc., and moreover, being fearful of birth in future life among beings gone to the three evil destinies, one must be a striver chiefly at a high condition, the state of a deity or human. Therefore, as for the chief thing for him to practise by reflection and meditation, - at first he must reflect and meditate that the human body of wealth and leisure which is of great use and difficult to obtain is certain to die without enduring for long, that there is no certainty as to the time of dying, and that at the time of death there is no way of help from anything whatsoever except the doctrine. Then, by way of considering the way of having certainly to take birth after death without going to utter nonexistence and the way in which there are no places of birth except the two, among beings gone to an evil or a fortunate destiny, and whatever miseries there are of each of the three evil destinies, if one is born among the beings gone to an evil destiny, and by considering the benefits of the arising of the desirable happiness and comfort of the high condition of a human or god, if one is born among beings gone to a fortunate destiny, - for the purpose of obtaining this, one goes to the Three Jewels for refuge, and avoids the ten non-virtues, the evils which are causes of birth among beings gone to an evil destiny, and safeguards correctly the right conduct of the ten virtues eliminating the ten non-virtues (and) which are the causes of birth among beings gone

to a fortunate destiny, etc.; these are the religious practices which are practised chiefly at the time of the small individual. This path, which it is necessary to practise principally during the time of the small individual, although it is not the principal object of practice during the time of the middle individual and the great individual also, is an object of practice shared by both of them. The reason is that, although the leading path principles which are the chief object of practice by the higher cannot be taken up at the time of the lower; without practising the lower path, one has no capacity to commence these specific paths of the higher. Therefore, most of the things which must be practised at the time of the lower are common also to the higher. If merely summarizing roughly a few things taught in the small and large Lam rims, one explains the way of meditating the impermanence of death (which is) the first object of practice during the time of the small individual, - meditation on the impermanence of death is of great importance and a great benefit. Because by meditating on the impermanence of death one understands that this life does not endure for long, one turns away from thinking of the appearances of this life, and this is the main exhorter to achieve the objectives of the future life on. If one is unmindful of death, one makes preparations to remain in this life for a long time, and once for the purpose of this, one's head is spinning to achieve the life-necessities of food and clothes etc. and happiness, comfort, good reputation, etc. one will never perform the objectives of the future-on. For example, - if someone of us who is going far away stays for a night at a roadside inn, other than preparing for going on the road tomorrow, he does not think of preparations to stay there for a long duration, - just so, if one is mindful of the impermanence of death, other than making preparation for the future life on, there will be no making of preparation for the purposes of this life. Therefore, the Blessed Lord, the Buddha teaches that of all perceptions, the perception of impermanence is best, that of all footprints, the elephant's footprint is best. The reason is that since the elephant has a very great bodily size, he leaves a large footprint unlike other animals, - just so, the perception which meditates on impermanence casts far away the thought which aims at this life. By way of eliciting a very strong thought of happiness from the future on and by way of exhorting one to perform the pure religious practice of avoiding vice and achieving virtue etc., it leaves a very large footprint.

As for the way of meditating on death, - meditation on

the certainty of death, reflection on the uncertainty of the time of death, and third, reflection that there is no help from any other than the doctrine at the time of death, are taught. One does a good consideration of each of these three. If one meditates upon these again and again, each leaves its own large and different impression. For example, - through recourse to attentiveness to the certainty of death, one sees that it is necessary definitely to achieve the purposes of future life. Secondly, by power of attentiveness to the uncertainty of the time of death, one sees that one must do now at once the achievement of the means (of insuring) the future, without dwelling with the thought of doing it tomorrow or the day after tomorrow. Thirdly, through attentiveness to there being no other help than the doctrine at the time of death, - this method of help to the future life, - the power of a king etc., very cherished relatives, a dear friend, things like gold, silver, etc., - there is no help from any of these, - not only that, this body which is born together with one is also no help, - all these are left behind at the time of death, and one has to depart alone like a hair taken out from the butter, and once one understands that at this time there is no friend other than the noble doctrine which one can take along, there will come a making of effort definitely to accomplish correctly the noble doctrine. The friend who definitely assists at the time of death is the virtuous action (taught by) the noble doctrine, and the enemy who definitely injures at that time is non-virtuous action. These two go along with one like body and shadow.

During the time of the small individual, when one has understood well the impermanence of death, then one (considers that) after death, not going to utter nonexistence, it is necessary to take birth. As for this birth, since there are no places of birth other than the two, among beings gone to an evil or a fortunate destiny, on the thought of what kind of happiness or misery of these two (kinds of) beings will come or not in future birth, and (thought on) white and black deeds which are the causes of happiness and misery and (on their) result. Moreover, when one thinks on what happiness or misery of the two (kinds of) beings will come in future birth, without thinking on the miseries of beings gone to a fortunate destiny, during the time of the small individual it is necessary to think chiefly on the miseries of beings gone to evil destinies. The so-called beings gone to evil destinies are brutes, pretas, and hell-denzens. Since if one were to state here in fine detail the miseries of each of these there would be too many words, (it cannot be done here), - when one states them by way of just the names of some chief

ones, - the brutes have many miseries, stupid, ignorant, the misery of one eating another, the large's eating the small, the small's eating the large, etc., forced and used by others. Similarly, the pretas have the misery of hunger and thirst, for instance, - some pretas have desire for food and drink, but even if they search for an eon, they do not find it; and others even though they seem to find food and drink, for those called "pretas possessed of outer obscurations" by virtue of quite large bellies and extremely narrow throats, food cannot pass inside, and those called "possessed of inner obscurations" at the time when they go to make use of food and drink, see it guarded by others carrying weapons, etc. in hand, without allowing them to eat the food and drink; again, once they perceive food and drink, when they try to eat, it becomes pus, blood, etc. without their being able to eat, and these have the unendurable misery of being unable to avail themselves of the necessities and amenities.

As for the hell-denizens, - their suffering is much greater than that of the brutes and the pretas. For example, - although there are many ways of explanation in the sutras and sastras, generally speaking, the hells are subdivided into 18 regions. Moreover, there are the so-called eight great hot hells, (i.e.), Samjiva, Kala-sutra, Samghata, Raurava, Maharaurava, Tapana, Mahatapana, and Avici. The cold hells are: Arbuda, Nirarbuda, Huhuva, Hahava, Atata, Utpala, Padma, and Mahapadma. Together with two in addition to these, the Utsada and the Pradesika, there are eighteen. As for the above eight hot hells, the misery of each latter is very much greater than each former. For example, - the misery of the Kala-sutra is greater than the Samjiva, and the Avici is the greatest misery. Likewise, for the eight cold hells, the misery of each latter becomes greater by double than each former. Not only is the misery of the above hells greater, but the life span is extremely long. For example, - as for the life span of the first, the Arbuda, from the point of view of the Abhidharmakośa, -if one seed were taken every hundred years from a storage bin containing 80 khal of sesamum from the Magadha region, the measure of time to exhaust the storage bin of the sesamum, is the measure of the lifespan of the Arbuda. As for the cold hells beneath that, the life span is twenty times greater than each one above it.

LESSON FOURTEEN

VOCABULARY

ལྷོག་གཅོད་པ་	killling	འཇོག་པ་	singling out; discrimination
མ་ལྷོག་པར་ལྷོག་པ་	stealing	འདྲར་ཆགས་པ་	attachment
འཇོག་གཤམ་པ་	sexual miscon- duct	ལྷོག་པ་	hatred
ལྷོག་	lie	མེད་ལྷོག་	anger
ལྷོག་པ་	slander	ལྷོག་པར་	gun
མེད་ལྷོག་པ་	harsh speech	ལྷོག་པ་	knife
འག་ལྷོག་པ་	nonsense	ལྷོག་པ་ (འག་ལྷོག་པ་)	to steal
འག་ལྷོག་པར་ལྷོག་པ་	covetousness	འག་ལྷོག་པ་	article, thing
འག་ལྷོག་པར་ལྷོག་པ་	the wish to injure	ལྷོག་པ་	wife
ལྷོག་པ་	wrong view	ལྷོག་པ་	pregnancy
ལྷོག་པ་	object	ལྷོག་པ་	ear
ལྷོག་པ་	action	ལྷོག་པ་	irritation, inflammation
ལྷོག་པ་	final end	ལྷོག་པ་ (འག་ལྷོག་པ་)	to beat
ལྷོག་པ་	actual	ལྷོག་པ་ (འག་ལྷོག་པ་)	to bind
ལྷོག་པ་	to set forth	ལྷོག་པ་	frost
ལྷོག་པ་	sheep	ལྷོག་པ་ (ལྷོག་པ་)	hail
ལྷོག་པ་	motivation	ལྷོག་པ་	leafage; crop

happiness and misery
(not) to know, (not) to comprehend

of the desire world
the higher regions (i.e. of the
three worlds of Buddhist cosmology)
(see note)

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

བདེ་སྐྱིད་ལྟོ་སྐྱོ་	happiness and misery
མི་མཁྱེན་པའི་མཁྱེན་པ་	(not) to know, (not) to comprehend
མཁྱེན་པའི་མཁྱེན་པ་	method
མེད་པར་བཟོ་	to annihilate
(མི་གསུམ་འགྲེལ་བའི་ཉེན་ཉེན་ལྟོ་སྐྱོ་)	to make a comparison; to compare
གཞན་གྱི་ཉེན་ཉེན་བཟོ་གཞན་གྱི་	to order or make another to do
མི་མཁྱེན་པའི་	cost; value; price
བསམ་བཤེས་ལྟོ་སྐྱོ་	intentionally
ཉེན་ཉེན་མི་མཁྱེན་པའི་	an inappropriate time
ཉེན་ཉེན་གྱི་ཉེན་ཉེན་	the one day vow
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	such and such
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	to express criticism
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	haphazardly
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	to do harm
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	the result of maturation
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	the result which is in conformity with the cause
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	the controlling result
ཉེན་ཉེན་	a life (i.e. as belonging to a string of lives)
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	bad results or effects
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	a god of the desire world
ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་ཉེན་	the higher regions (i.e. of the three worlds of Buddhist cosmology) (see note)

NOTES

1. ཉམ་མོངས་ "the passions are" - Nescience (གཉི་མུག་) is counted as one of the passions (ཉམ་མོངས་). Also, when a passion obscuration (ཉམ་གྲིབ་) and a knowledge of obscuration (ཤེས་ལྗོན་) are delineated, nescience is on the side of passion obscuration. Also included on the side of the passion obscuration are the seeds deposited by previous passions which produce an impassioned mentality in the future. What are placed in the side of the knowledge obscurations are other depositions of nescience which produce the habit formations which are obstacles to all-knowledge.
2. ཉུག་གསུམ་ "the three poisons", i.e. འདོད་ཆགས་ attachment, རྩོད་ཀྱང་ hatred, and གཉི་མུག་ nescience.
3. རྣམས་གསུམ་ "the three realms". These are the three realms of the triple Buddhist cosmos, i.e. འདོད་ཀྱི་རྣམས་ the desire realm, གཞུགས་རྣམས་ the form realm, and གཞུགས་མེད་རྣམས་ the formless realm. The desire realm which is characterized by sensual attachment or attachment to objects of the five senses, is said to extend from the hells through the worlds of the pretas, animals, and men up to the sixth of six realms of deities. The form and formless realms are produced by the absence of sensual attachment resulting from meditation. The form realm which is described as consisting of seventeen subdivisions of the four dhyanas or absorptions (བསམ་གཏན་བཞི་) is made from the point of view of the size and subtlety of the bodies of its denizens. The formless realm consisting of four main

divisions is made from the point of view of the meditative absorption. The term lower realm (ཁམས་ལོན་མ་) signifies the desire region whereas the term higher regions (ཁམས་ལོན་མ་) signifies the form and formless realms.

TRANSLATION

Likewise, during the time of the small individual, one of the principal things to reflect and meditate upon is the cause of happiness and misery, (i.e.) the white action of virtue and the black action of non-virtue and their cause and effect. When there is no good understanding of the action result of white and black action, the causes of happiness and misery, we, without wishing for misery, commence continuously by many ways to effect the causes of misery by the power of not understanding its real causes, and likewise, although we have the thought which desires happiness, by the power of not knowing these causes of happiness as the (real) causes of happiness, we defeat them like an enemy and so bring about their annihilation. Therefore, the necessity of understanding the actual situation of the cause and effect of both the white action of virtue, the cause of happiness, and the black action of non-virtue, the cause of misery, is of great importance.

From the point of view of reducing broadly these virtuous and non-virtuous actions to the principal (types), each is taught to be tenfold. If among these one first identifies in the beginning the ten non-virtuous actions, it is easy to identify the ten virtues which eliminate them; hence, first, identification of the ten non-virtues in brief are; the three non-virtues of body; killing, stealing, and sexual misconduct; the four non-virtues of speech; lying, slander, rough speech and senseless speech; and the three non-virtues of mind; covetousness, the wish to injure, and wrong view. Moreover, each of the ten non-virtues is also fourfold (by way of) object, thought, action, and final end; likewise, when all four are fulfilled, the actual action of a particular one of the ten non-virtues is completed. Again, if one explains killing at length, one can understand the others by comparison with that. Hence, the nature of each, individually other than just briefly, will not be set forth at length for the others. Again, killing, for example, - if one illustrates by the killing, say, of a sheep, whatever sheep is to be killed is the object, and again within the thought there are the three, the passion, the motivation, and the singling out. The passion is attachment, hatred, or ignorance. For example, to kill on account of attachment is to kill a living creature out of desire for the meat, etc. To kill on account of hatred is, say, to kill the victim on account of the arising of anger, and to kill on account of ignorance is, say, to kill with the thought that it is a virtue if, having killed a living creature, one makes of it a religious offering. The motivation is the heart-

felt desire to kill the living creature to be killed. The singling out is a singling out at the time of killing that this is that living creature which one wishes to kill. These thoughts having been made, the action signifies both to strike with a knife or a gun, etc. by oneself or to commission another to do the killing. As for the final end, when the living creature to be killed has died on account of the action, the final end is accomplished and at this time there is completion of the real or actual act of killing.

The second, stealing, - there is the wish on account of whichever of the three poisons to take away the property, etc. which another holds as his own, and, having stolen another's article of a sufficient value, one finally produces the idea that one has obtained another's property as one's own; this is the actual action of stealing. The third, sexual misconduct, signifies the performance of the sexual act not with one's own wife but a wife held by another as his, etc. or, even with one's own wife but at an inappropriate time (like) during pregnancy, the one day vow, etc. or through an inappropriate avenue (i.e.) another aperture (than the customary), or at an inappropriate place (like) in front of a stupa etc.

As for the four non-virtues of speech, - first, lying, signifies another's hearing the telling of the lie to him intentionally by way of whichever of the three poisons, that one has not seen what one has seen, or has seen what one has not, and likewise, that one has heard what one has not heard or does not know what one knows, etc. As for the second, slander, - in regards to its object (which is) persons either friendly or unfriendly, the thought is the thought which, by the power of whichever of the three poisons, wishes to make friendly persons unfriendly and to make more distant those (already) unfriendly; and the action is inflammatory speech (carried) between friendly and unfriendly persons, for instance, "he said such and such vile things about you", and the final end is by recourse to putting an irritation between both mutually, to make far apart persons friendly and unfriendly. The third, harsh speech, is by power of whichever of the three poisons, bad words which express criticism concerning another's body, speech, mind, or behavior etc. like calling another a thief or stupid etc. The fourth, senseless speech, is talking haphazardly as one likes without purpose, under the power of whichever of the three poisons.

The three non-virtues of mind are covetousness, the wish to injure, and wrong view. Covetousness signifies the portion

of the mind which longs for another's possessions with the thought "would it were mine" at the time of seeing another's possessions. The wish to injure signifies the attitude which wishes to do harm to another by way of striking or binding or killing, etc. Wrong view signifies a bad viewpoint which states that the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha are untrue, that former and future life are untrue, that the arising of happiness in future from the performance of virtue in this life, and the arising of misery from the performance of non-virtue in this life are untrue, etc. Now, the result of these ten non-virtuous actions has three major (aspects), the result of maturation, the result consistent with the cause, and the controlling result. Through performance of a great non-virtue, maturation is birth among the denizens of hell, of a middle one among the pretas, and by a small one among the animals. Again, for example, if one illustrates by killing, maturation of a great, middle, or small act of killing is taking birth among the beings gone to the three unfortunate destinies, and the result of killing which is consistent with the cause is both experience in conformity with the cause and acting in conformity with the cause.

As for experience in conformity with the cause, - once one has experienced the evil destiny (which is) the maturation of killing, afterwards, even though one is born as a man, there will come a short life, being killed beyond one's control by another, many diseases, etc. Likewise, acting in conformity with the cause, - by the force of being accustomed to kill in former life, as a result of that, there is pleasure in killing another in this life also. As for the so-called controlling cause, there will be a ripening upon one's outer resources. For example, there will be injury to one's outer things by fire and water, etc., the bad result of destruction etc. to crops by hail and frost etc. and these will also be of small virtue. The ten black actions of the non-virtues and their cause and effect having been made briefly, as for the white action of the virtues, one does not set down as virtues merely not doing the ten non-virtues, but upon perceiving the bad effects of each of the ten non-virtues, one avoids them according to this thought, and the ten which safeguard against these is called the path of virtuous action. Through recourse to preserving according to the lawful conduct, which avoids the ten non-virtues such as these, one will come to obtain the high condition of the state of a human or a deity, and again, one will obtain respectively (the condition of) a human by performance of small virtuous action, a god of the desire world by middle action, and the happiness and comfort of the higher regions by great action.

LESSON FIFTEEN

VOCABULARY

ལྡོག་པོ་	to be depressed	རྒྱུ་ལྡན་པ་	satisfaction
འགོ་ལ་	to recover	མཚན་མེད་པ་	satisfaction
ཚོད་གཏོང་	to search for; to investigate	ཀློང་ལྡན་པ་	Māndhātā (P.N.)
ལྷན་པ་	a specific, a particular	འཕྲུལ་པ་	wealth
ཉམས་དམེགས་	disadvantage	རྒྱུ་ལྡན་པ་	Jambudvipa, this world con- tinent
མི་མོན་	family	ལྗོངས་	continent
མཚམས་པ་	pool	རྒྱུ་ལྡན་པ་	<u>Cakravartin</u>
མཚན་མེད་པ་	daughter-in-law	མི་མོན་	Mt. Sumeru, the cosmic mountain
ཚུམ་	husband	འཕྲུལ་པ་	Indra
ལུ་	lap	ལྗོངས་	to go
ཉམས་མེད་པ་	<u>śrāvaka</u> , disciple	འཕྲུལ་པ་	throne (H)
མཚན་མེད་པ་	Sariputra	ལྗོངས་	to fall
འཕྲུལ་པ་	to beat	ལྗོངས་	century
ལྗོངས་	laughter	མཚན་མེད་པ་	sometimes
འཕྲུལ་པ་	to raise	ལྗོངས་	attractive; desirable
མཚན་མེད་པ་	position	ལྗོངས་	inseparable; in- distinguishable
འཕྲུལ་པ་	to chew	ལྗོངས་	whole
འཕྲུལ་པ་	incomparable		
ལྗོངས་	beggar		

NOTES

1. ལྷོ་བའི་ལྷོ་ལས་ཚེན་པོ་ "an extremely strong despondency which is despondent with." Tibetan usage often qualifies or specifies a verb derived noun by joining to it the identical verb, a usage which English usage would consider unpleasantly redundant, e.g. (Lesson 4) དཔོན་མཚན་གསུམ་ལ་སྐྱབས་ལུ་འགྲོ་བའི་སྐྱབས་འགྲོ་ "the refuge taking which takes refuge in the Three Jewels."
2. . . . ལྷུན་ "continue to. . ." ལྷུན་ is a particle which suffixed to a verb signifies "to continue to . . ."
3. འཕྲེང་ལོ་རྒྱུ་བའི་རྒྱལ་པོ་ "Cakravartin". According to Buddhist tradition a Cakravartin or universal monarch is a being of such an extraordinary accumulation of moral merit as to be assured of an unimpeded and non-violent sovereignty over a whole world continent. Four kinds of Cakravartins are distinguished, i.e. a gold Cakravartin, a silver, a bronze, and an iron according to whether their sovereignty extends over four, three, two or one world continents of the Buddhist cosmological scheme. Similarly, the appearance of Cakravartin in the world is viewed as belonging to earlier ages when human virtue and life-span are held to have been much greater than the present degenerate times (སྐྱིལ་ལོ་རྒྱུ་).

TRANSLATION

- I. At the time of the middle individual, what is there chiefly to be practised?
- G. Since the so-called middle individual is a striver chiefly for the deliverance which frees from all the miseries of the round of existence, not just the miseries of those gone to the evil destinies, - in order to develop a very powerful striving for the deliverance which frees from the round of existence, once one perceives the faults of the round of existence, if one does not produce from the heart an extremely strong depression which is depressed by the round, there will not come a strong attitude of wishing to be free from it. For example, - it is just as if a prisoner, without manifesting despondency with remaining in a prison, has the thought to its goodness and comfort, there will not come a desire to be free from it, and if this is absent, he will make no method of being freed. Therefore, in regard to cultivation of the method of release from the round of existence, the Blessed Lord taught the four, the truth of misery, the truth of the arising of all, the truth of cessation, and the truth of the path. As for these four, two are made from the point of view of the cause and effect of circuiting the round of existence, and two are made from the point of view of the cause and effect of deliverance from the round. The reason is that the cause of circuiting the round of existence is called the arising of all, - for example, like the virtuous and non-virtuous action which is the cause of circuiting the round of existence and the three poisons, the passions which motivate these actions. From the point of view of the effect of circuiting the round of existence, it is called the truth of misery, - for example, like the suffering aggregates which take birth under the sway of action and the passions. Similarly, the cause of deliverance from the round of existence is called the truth of the path. It is the path of the Aryan individual which is comprehensive of the three disciplines, the wisdom etc. which comprehends directly no self (thereby) cutting off from the root the apprehension of a self. The so-called three disciplines are the disciplines of lawful conduct, meditation, and understanding. The result of deliverance from the round of existence is called the truth of cessation; by the power of the truth of the path the action and the passions which are the cause of the round of existence are annihilated at the root, and it (the truth of cessation) is like the deliverance which frees from misery and its cause. Therefore, during the time

of the middle individual, the principal practice is the necessity to cultivate and to avoid by way of understanding well the actuality of the four truths. When one actually makes the sequence of the order of the meanings of the four truths, first comes the truth of the arising of all, next the truth of misery, its result, (then) the truth of the path (which is) the means of avoiding misery and its causes, and by recourse to that the truth of cessation which is deliverance from misery and its causes, - successively. Nonetheless, the Blessed Lord when he taught the doctrine of the four truths first stated misery, the result; next he stated the arising of all, the cause; then stated the truth of cessation, the result of deliverance from the round of existence; (last) he stated the truth of the path which is the means of effecting deliverance from the round of existence. The stating (them) in such a way is statement in conformity with the sequence of the way of developing the attitude which wishes to cultivate and to avoid by way of understanding the actuality of the four truths. The reason is that it is like the steps of a sick man's commencing the means of being delivered from the sickness. When we are suffering from an illness, first we recognise the misery and objectionableness of the illness. Only at the time of seeing its objectionableness is there produced the thought investigating whether or not there are causes for it. At the time of recognising, upon examination, the causes of the illness, there is produced thought of wishing to find the happiness of recovery from the illness and its causes. When this is produced, there is produced successively the thought wishing to take the medicine which effects cure from the illness, - just so, persons striving for emancipation also must first understand the truth of misery by way of considering well the disadvantages of the misery of the round of existence. After understanding this, once there is consideration as to what are the causes from which it arises, one investigates the truth of the arising of all. At the time of investigating these causes, (i.e.) the arising of all, there is produced thought wishing to obtain the truth of cessation which is rid of misery and its causes. When this is produced, there arises the thought wishing to cultivate the truth of the path (which is) the means of release from misery; such is the sequence of their production.

Therefore, first upon considering the actual situation of the misery of the round of existence, it is necessary to consider its disadvantages. Consequently, if one asks what is it to consider the misery of the round of existence? - to state briefly a few things stated at length in the small

and long Lam rims etc. on both the consideration of misery in general, and the consideration of specific miseries.

Again first, the general misery of the round of existence: - although many are stated (i.e.), a way of considering eight miseries, the misery of uncertainty etc., a way of considering six, and a way of considering three, - to put forth just a couple from among these:- for instance, - the misery of uncertainty: - Once one has taken birth in this round, without having surety or certainty about friend foe, wealth poverty, etc., they reverse back and forth, and there are many miseries of vicissitude. Moreover, it is just as in the present life also we have seen and are seeing stories of a principal foe's becoming a friend and also of a principal friend's becoming an enemy. From the point of view of other lives, for instance: - once there was a pool in the back of a family's house, and its father was constantly killing and eating the fish in that pool. The father having died, on account of his former attachment to fish he was born subsequently as a fish in the pool behind the house. The mother by the force of her attachment to the family, when she had died was born as the family dog. The principal enemy of the family was attached to the family's daughter-in-law, and after death he was born as the son of the daughter-in-law. When this had occurred, one day the husband of the daughter-in-law killed his father who had been born as a fish (in the pool) behind and ate the flesh. The mother who had been born as a dog was beaten when she tried to eat the fish bones; their enemy who was born as an infant, they carried in their lap and fondled affectionately without any measure. Thereupon, a bikhsu of the Blessed Lord named Sariputra, perceiving with his supernormal knowledge, spoke thus, "A father's flesh is eaten and a mother beaten - a mortal enemy is carried on the lap - a wife gnaws a husband's bones - the law of the round arouses a laugh." Now, as there is uncertainty as to friend and foe, without certainty also as to a high or low status, the station as of a king turns into the least of servants etc. in later life, and as for uncertainty as to wealth, for example, it is just as even though desirable lands and fields, riches and resources, attendant servants, etc. are without comparison by others, in later life (their owners) have become and are still becoming beggars of the most abject of beggars. Similarly, the misery of dissatisfaction, - once in the round of existence a little happiness is present, we, unable to be satisfied or find a way of satisfaction with that, (and) dissatisfied with the food, the clothes, the resources and amenities, the status, and the like which we happen to have, wish for more and better etc. than these, and there are many miseries in hard work

for the sake of these or in not obtaining them. For example, - in a story of the past, a very ancient one of the string of lives of the Blessed Lord, was a birth as the king Mandhata. Having immeasurable wealth and power, he first held sway over Jambudvipa. Then, successively having become master over the other four continents, he became a Cakravartin. Then, dissatisfied with that he went to the summit of Mt. Sumeru and obtained mastery over half the throne of Indra, the king of the gods of the heaven of the thirty-three. Then, the desire of Mandhata not being fulfilled, he thought he must take all the power of Indra, and at the time of trying to take it the result of his former good karma was finished, and he fell down powerless. Similarly, in the twentieth century the story of the German Hitler, well known in this Jambudvipa, is also a happening through the fault of dissatisfaction. Likewise, there come many miseries of vicissitude, high and low, again and again, and the miseries of leaving the body again and again and of continuing on. For example, - sometimes one obtains the good body of a human or a deity. One uses the best resources and amenities of the wealth of food and clothes etc. Even experiencing the happiness of the wealth of play etc. together with the beautiful and attractive sons and daughters of men and gods, powerless, one comes to have to leave a body such as this, and having died, one must experience many miseries of heat and cold like burning, body and fire having become indistinguishable for those gone to the unfortunate destinies, or once one has taken the body of a preta there is the great misery of having to become of the nature of hunger and thirst etc. not finding food and clothes for the entire life.

A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Fifteen.

- 1 འཁོར་བམ་ཐང་དག་ལས་ཐར་བའི་ཐར་པ་དོན་གཞིར་བྱི་གྲོ་ཉུགས་ཚེན་པོ་
ལོག་སྐྱེ་བར་བྱེད་པ་ལ་གཤེད་གོས་པ་ཤིང་།
- 2 འཁོར་བའི་ལྗོངས་ཚེན་པོ་མེད་ན་དེ་ལས་ཐར་འདོད་བྱི་གྲོ་ཉུགས་
ཉུག་མི་ཕོང་བའི་དཔེ་གཤེད་ཤིང་།
- 3 འོན་འཁོར་བའི་ལས་ཐར་བའི་ཐབས་སྒོམ་ཡ་དེ་ལ་གཙོ་བོར་གཤེད་ག་
ཤེད་གསུངས་པོད་དམ།
- 4 མ་ལོ་བདེན་པ་བཞི་འོན་པས་འཁོར་བར་འཁོར་བྱེད་བྱི་གྲོ་ཉུགས་
བྱི་དབང་དུ་བྱས་པའི་བདེན་པ་གཞིས་པོ་དེ་གང་འདྲས་གང་འདྲས་
ཤིང་།
- 5 འཁོར་བའི་ལས་གྲོལ་བའི་འབྲས་བུ་འགོག་བདེན་ཐེར་བདེ་གང་འདྲ་
གཞིག་ལ་ཐེར་བྱི་ཤིང་།
- 6 འཕྲུལ་བའི་གསུམ་ཐེར་ན་གཤེད་ཤིང་།
- 7 ལམ་བདེན་ཐེར་ཡ་དེ་གང་འདྲ་ཐེར་དོས་འདོན་དགོས་པ་ཤིང་།
- 8 འོན་བདེན་པ་བཞི་པོ་དེ་དོན་དག་དངོས་གཞན་འབྱུང་སྐྱེས་བྱི་གོ་
ཤིམ་གང་འདྲས་ཤིང་།
- 9 བཙོམ་ལྷན་འདས་བྱིས་བདེན་བཞི་འོན་པས་འཁོར་གསུང་དུས་བདེན་
པ་བཞི་འོག་ཤིམ་གང་འདྲས་ཐེར་གསུངས་པ་ཤིང་།
- 10 འོན་བཙོམ་ལྷན་འདས་བྱིས་བདེན་བཞི་གསུང་དུས་བྱི་གོ་
ཤིམ་དང་མི་མཚུན་པར་གསུངས་པའི་དགོས་པ་གཤེད་ཡིན་པ་ནོ།
- 11 དུང་པོ་ལྷན་འདྲེན་བྱི་གསུང་ཚུལ་ལས་མ་སྐྱེས་དེ་ལ་གང་འདྲས་
པོད་པ་ཤིང་།

12 འོན་ རེས་པ་མེད་པའི་ལྷན་གསལ་བསམ་ཚུལ་གང་འདྲས་ཤིང་།

13 དག་གཉེན་ལ་རེས་པ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་ལ། བཟུང་བའི་མ་ལ་འཚོག་
ཙམ་ཡོགས་ཀྱི་ཚོགས་བཅད་ཅིག་གསུངས་པོད་པ་དེའི་དོན་གང་
འདྲས་ཤིང་།

14 འོན་ མཚོ་དམར་ལ་རེས་པ་མེད་ལྷན་གསལ་གང་འདྲས་ཤིང་།

15 རེས་པ་མེད་པའི་ལྷན་གསལ་ཀྱི་དཔེ་ལ་རྒྱལ་པོད་ལས་བྱའི་ལོ་
རྒྱུ་ལོག་གསུངས་འདྲུག་ག་ དེ་ཚུད་པར་གིས་བྱ་བྱི་འདྲུག་
གསུ་ མེ་ལོ་གཅིག་གསུངས་པོགས་གནད་དང་།

16 དམེན་པར་པར་མཚོ་དམར་ཏུ་འཁྱུར་བའོགས་ལྷན་གསལ་ཀྱི་པོ་
ག་པོ་གསུངས་པོད་པ་ཤིང་།

17 མེ་ལོ་ འཚོམ་བ་ཀྱི་དང་ལྷོ་བྱག་གི་ལྷན་གསལ་བསམ་ཚུལ་ཀྱི་
མེ་ལོ་ཚོ་ལོག་གསལ་ག་པར་གསུངས་པོད་དམ།

LESSON SIXTEEN

VOCABULARY

अङ्ग	to age	अङ्ग	to be diminished
अङ्ग	to be ill	अङ्ग	bow
अङ्ग	life	अङ्ग	bent
अङ्ग	pleasant, attractive	अङ्ग	radiance, brilliance (of complexion, youth, health, etc.)
अङ्ग	stomach; hollow of the trunk or torso	अङ्ग	sack, bag
अङ्ग	uncleanliness	अङ्ग	to break
अङ्ग	smell	अङ्ग	wrinkle
अङ्ग	cavity, hollow	अङ्ग	cast, appearance; color
अङ्ग	to close up, to stop up	अङ्ग	to change
अङ्ग	narrow, tight	अङ्ग	a pole for tethering
अङ्ग	boiling	अङ्ग	to arise, to stand
अङ्ग	to touch	अङ्ग	to hide; to sneak
अङ्ग	to jump	अङ्ग	load
अङ्ग	womb, uterus	अङ्ग	old woman; grandmother
अङ्ग	(anatomical) bone	अङ्ग	to bring together; to come together
अङ्ग	to be squeezed	अङ्ग	skin
अङ्ग	(un)bearable	अङ्ग	
अङ्ग	slowly	अङ्ग	

उभय	(v.) to protrude, (n.) protrusion	उभय	to fall
उन्मत्त	deaf	(उभय +) भव	just before
उन्मत्त	blind	भवे	to be hit, to be struck
उन्मत्त	to be confused	उभय	seat; abode
उन्मत्त	to sway	उभय	garland; rosary
उभय	experience	उभय	to become old
उभय	asura, antigods, titans	उभय	dust
उभय	a part of	उभय (उभय)	to accumulate
उभय	the worse (i.e. of a better and a worse)	उभय	just before, at the point of
उभय (उभय)	to cut in pieces		
उभय	the most; the general; the common		

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

उभय	the body of a human (i.e. a human life)
उभय	to descend upon one; to happen to one
उभय	just to touch the surface of (i.e. to discuss extremely briefly) (Lit. to mention the corners of)
उभय	to remain throughout or during
उभय	precipice; cavern

ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་
 ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་

narrow
 near to dying
 the extremities (i.e. the hands
 and feet)
 to be depressed
 a scowling or frowning woman
 since having already . . .
 the desire region, kamadhatu
 the form region, rupadhatu
 the formless region, arupadhatu
 quarrel and dispute
 a god of the desire region
 to die; to transmigrate
 "a three occasions (god)"
 signs of death, death omens
 the three regions or realms (of
 the round of existences)

NOTES

1. ལྔ་པ་ལོ་བུ་ "into the tenth month". The word ལོ་, a noun meaning "face", is used in time expressions, months, years, etc., and signifies any part or portion short of completion.
2. བད་ "almost". The verb + བད་ or བད་ལ་ signifies "near to" or "almost".
3. ས་རྒྱུ་ཐག་པ་ཚད་པ་ནང་བཞིན་ "like the breaking of the (hold) rope of bags of dirt". This simile refers to the Tibetan method of transporting goods or stuff on a mule. First a portage saddle is placed upon the mule's back. As a means of securing baggage, etc. རྒྱུ་ཐག་ both sides of the mule by a hold-rope tied to the two packs of baggage and stretched across the portage saddle.
4. ལྔ་པ་ལོ་ལྔ་མ་ "a scowling old woman" is literally a fierce, wrinkled woman. The term is commonly applied to female dieties of a fierce, wrathful aspect.
5. ལྔ་པ་ལོ་ "since", "because" = ཡིན་ཚང་ .
6. ལྔ་པ་ལོ་ འདོད་པའི་རྒྱུ་ཐག་ལྔ་པ་ལོ་ "the asuras belonging to the gods of the desire world." In the Buddhist scheme of the round of existences (འཁོར་བ་), the asuras are sometimes included among the gods of the desire world. Sometimes they are counted as a separate realm of beings. In the former instance, the round of existences is reckoned as fivefold. In the latter instance, it is reckoned as sixfold. The sixfold scheme is the more commonly resorted to, especially in paintings depicting the round of existences.

7. **शुभ्र, शुभ्र, शुभ्र** "the three occasions gods" is an epithet applied to all classes of dieties belonging to the desire and form worlds.
8. **शुभ्र, शुभ्र, शुभ्र** Literally, "to put away from considering" is a rhetorical expression like the English "what need is there to mention?"

Concerning these, - merely to touch upon the surface of a few; - The misery of birth, for instance. - At the time of remaining in a mother's belly throughout a great travail towards nine or part of ten months in a kind of darkness, a tight stopped up cavity and the bad smell of uncleanness. During this, there are many unbearable miseries by force of the mother's proper or improper eating, drinking, behavior etc. For instance; when the mother drinks hot tea, there arises a pain like the touch of boiling water. When the mother carries a heavy load it seems like being put under a great hill. When the mother jumps and when she walks about, it seems like falling down from a great precipice. At the time of coming forth from the mother's belly, one is squeezed between the two pelvic bones of the mother, and there comes an unbearable pain like near to dying. Many infants even die from the misery of this time. Often also, many mothers die together with (them):

The misery of aging. - The organs of the eyes and the rest (of the organs) and the understanding etc. slowly by degrees are lost. The body becomes like a load the weight of which is unbearable. There is much difficulty, like standing up, and one must rise placing all their weight on one hitting down, the body falls like a sack of dirt from

TRANSLATION

The general misery of the round of existence having been made just briefly, - as for reflection on specific miseries; - since the way of reflecting on the miseries of those gone to the evil destinies has already appeared briefly in the chapter on the small individual, in this chapter on the middle individual, the way of reflecting also upon the miseries of those gone to the fortunate destinies, humans and gods, will be explained. If one illustrates this by the example of men, - even though one is delivered from those gone to the evil destinies and has taken a human birth, this human body also has the characteristic of misery. The reason is that first there is the misery of birth, then the misery of aging, the misery of illness, finally the misery of dying. During this life also, there is the misery of separation from a cherished friend, the misery of encountering an unpleasant enemy, the misery of not obtaining an object of desire even though one strives (for it), the misery of many unwished for evil conditions descending upon one; (these) etc. will come without limit.

Concerning these, - merely to touch upon the surface of a few; - The misery of birth, for instance. At the time of remaining in a mother's belly throughout a great travail towards nine or part of ten months in a kind of darkness, a tight stopped up cavity and the bad smell of uncleanness. During this, there are many unbearable miseries by force of the mother's proper or improper eating, drinking, behavior etc. For instance, when the mother drinks hot tea, there arises a pain like the touch of boiling water. When the mother carries a heavy load it seems like being put under a great hill. When the mother jumps and when she walks etc., it seems like falling down from a great precipice. At the time of coming forth from the mother's belly, one is squeezed between the two pelvic bones of the mother, and there comes an unbearable pain like near to dying. Many infants even die from the misery of this time. Often also, many mothers die together with (them).

The misery of aging; - The organs of the eyes and the rest (of the senses) and the understanding etc. slowly by degrees are dim, the body bent like a bow; the radiance (of complexion) deteriorates. There is much difficulty, like on standing up, one must rise planting all four extremities, and on sitting down, the body falls like a sack of dirt (from a

donkey) when the (hold) rope breaks. One becomes of a very evil cast, the head hairs etc. white and many wrinkles etc., and there is the misery as of a completely changed birth. Thus it is as Mi la ras pa says, "Getting up like pulling out a tether pole for one. Walking like (a cat's) sneaking up on a bird for two. Sitting down like a (rope-)cut bag of dirt for three. At the time when three, these three, combine, grandma is upset at the decline of the magical body." and, "Wrinkles to compress the outer skin for one. Bones protruding from spent inner flesh and blood for two. In between, swaying, and confused, dull, deaf, and blind for three. At the time when three, these three, combine, grandma is a scowler with an unfine appearance."

The misery of sickness; - Since it is easy to understand from our own experience (of it), it will not be discussed separately. Along with that, the misery of death also, as it has been touched upon above in the chapter on the impermanence of death, (the reflection) of the small individual, there is no need to discuss it here. Just the miseries of humans (of) those gone to the fortunate destinies having been made, (the others of) those gone to the fortunate destinies, the gods, also have misery. As for the gods who are included in the round of existence, there are the three types of gods of the three regions, the desire region, the form region, and the formless region. Although generally, the Asuras belong to the gods of the desire realm, among the gods, their envy is greater, and on account of their many miseries of fighting and contention etc., they are the lowest of the worse among the gods; therefore, often they are counted separately from the gods. From this, they have the many miseries of being wounded and maimed etc. by quarreling and contention back and forth with some of the lower gods; not only that, generally, most of the gods of the desire region, just before dying, have an unbearable mental anguish called "the misery of transmigration fall". The reason is, that these gods called "the three occasion (gods)" know these three: at the time of their birth from whence in the past they are being born, at the time of the present where they are born, and at the time of dying where they will be born in the future. The so-called five signs of death strike that god ascertaining that he is to die after seven divine days. At the time of the appearance of these, the five signs of death, such as the deterioration of his radiance, displeasure at remaining in his abode, the aging of the garlands of flower about his body, his garments' having an odor, and the appearance of sweat, no other god comes near him; even one to behold him with the eyes is rare, and he must ex-

perience the misery alone in a solitary place. During life as a god, once rapt with divine felicity, there is no accumulation of extensive new virtuous acts and, having used up the result of former good action, most gods come to be born among those gone to the evil destinies. Therefore, at the time of their perceiving clairvoyantly just before dying their place of birth among which of the three evil destinies and the evil body etc. (to come), there arises an extremely great unbearable mental anguish. Therefore, although the bodily suffering of a hell-denizen is great, the mental suffering of the "transmigration-fall" of the gods of the desire realm is taught to be greater. Likewise, the gods of the form realm and the formless realm; - although there is no misery felt by mind or body, the birth of these arises from action and the passions, and it is necessary (for them) to die without a personal control (over the matter), and without obtaining personal control over where they will be born after death, they are under the other power of action and the passions; therefore, they have the misery of an all-pervasive conditionedness. Consequently, once one has taken a birth in the round of existences here in the three realms, it is necessary to know well first the character and disadvantages etc. of misery from the point of view of reflection on the way in which (none of the above) go beyond the nature of whichever of three (kinds of) miseries.

LESSON SEVENTEEN

VOCABULARY

रुग्णः	roughly	मरुतः	merit
मनःशुद्धः	conceit, egotism	चलति	(v.) to move, (a.) mobile
समानः	equal	भारः	heavier
पुष्पः	to be inflated, to be puffed up	भारः	heavy-light, weight
संशयः	uncertainty (i.e. between two alternatives), dilemma	ध्वजः	thrower, hurler; shooter
अज्ञानः	nescience	बीजः	seed
नाशः	to destroy	सदृशः	to be like, to resemble
अपस्तम्बः	to hypostatize; to superimpose	उष्णः	heat, warmth
शुष्कः	moisture	कुत्तः	puppy
ज्वरः	barley	सुखः	savory, delicious
शुष्कः	dry	दुःखः	bad, evil; miserable
कुम्भः	sprout	दुःखः	pain
बाह्यः	outer	दासः	servant
पकः	to cook	त्यागः	renunciation
सम्यक्	careful		
निरपेक्षः	neutral; indeterminate		

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

ཉེ་བའི་སྐྱེ་བྱུང་སྡེ་

the cognate passions

ཚུལ་མེད་པའི་

inappropriate; unaccording; im-
proper

མཚན་ལྡན་གྱི་

very much, extremely

འཇུག་ལུགས་

view to the impermanent

འཇུག་ལུགས་ལྡན་པའི་

religion, discipline, manner

འདྲིམ་པའི་

in every single instant

འདྲིམ་པའི་སྐབས་སྐབས་ལྷོད་པའི་

former-later; past-future

འདྲིམ་པའི་

a nihilistic view

འདྲིམ་པའི་

"the five fires", i.e. a form of
austerity in Brahmanism

འདྲིམ་པའི་

whatever you have; whatever is
possible to you

འདྲིམ་པའི་

mental action

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

deliberative action

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

the higher realms or regions
(i.e. the form region and formless
region of Buddhist cosmos)

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

the present

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

number of times

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

first part of life, earlier life

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

the second part of life, later
life

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

the one after the next

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

precipitative action

འདྲིམ་པའི་འཇུག་ལུགས་

१. ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय
 २. ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय
 ३. ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय
 ४. ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय
 ५. ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय
 ६. ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय

effective action
 complementary action
 song of experience (i.e. of dharma)
 (see note)
 as is; exact
 steps of entry (see note)
 please do

NOTES

1. བྱིན་པ་ལག་བཤི་ལྷོད་པ་བྱེད་པ་ "performance of the actions of a dog or pig" refers to various ritual and/or ethical behaviours, which have recourse to imitation of the gestures, movements, natural cycles, etc. of animals.
2. ལྷོད་མེད་པ་གཞན་ "the other passions". See Lesson 14, Note 1.
3. ལས་ཀྱི་སྐུན་འབྱུང་ "the arising of all which is action". This is a genitive of apposition, e.g. the sun of the Buddha, viz. the sun which is the Buddha.
4. ལྷོད་པ་མཁུར་ "songs of experience", a kind of yogic song in in which the yogin gives a lyrical expression to his personal religious experiences.
5. འཇུག་རིམ་ "the steps of entry", i.e. the procedure of entering or becoming involved in.

TRANSLATION

- I. What is the so-called truth of the arising of all?
- G. The so-called truth of the arising of all is both action and the passions, i.e. the action which is the cause of circuiting the round of existence and the passions which are the cause of that (action). These passions, generally speaking, are the six root passions, attachment etc., and twenty cognate passions, etc. From among these, to explain just roughly the six root passions, - these are attachment, hatred, conceit, nescience, (wrong) view, and dilemma. Attachment signifies a desire which wishes to obtain or not to be separated from the object once one has, with an inappropriate fixing of thought, imputed a cognitum as of attractive aspects. So-called inappropriate fixing of thought means, for instance, apprehending the unclean as clean, or apprehending the miserable as happy, or apprehending the impermanent as permanent, or apprehending the selfless as self. Hatred signifies a mental attitude possessed of an angry aspect once one has with an inappropriate fixing of thought imputed a cognitive object as of unattractive aspects. Pride signifies a mental attitude which is possessed of an aspect of inflation or elevation which, with an inappropriate fixing of thought, apprehends equality on viewing a higher object, or superiority on viewing the equal, or extreme (lowness) on viewing the lower, etc. Nescience is explained both as gloom as to the reality of no-self, such as apprehending the self of an individual, and the gloom which does not understand the causality of action etc., and view is the five; a view to the impermanent, view to the extremities, wrong view, holding (a wrong) view as the best, holding (unlawful conduct etc. as) lawful conduct and a religious discipline. Among these, a view to the impermanent is a view which opines "I" and "mine" upon having as its object the five aggregates of one's own continuum which have the character of aggregation and of destruction in every single instant. This is the two; the apprehension of a self and the nescience (which is) darkness as to the real; not only that, this is also like the root of all the passions and the root motivating the accumulating of acts etc. A view to the extremities signifies hypostatizing and then holding as pure, or permanent, etc. a cognitum apprehended by the (above) view to the impermanent. Wrong view signifies a nihilistic view which views that there is no past-future life, no cause and effect of actions, no deliverance etc. Holding the view as the best signifies holding a bad view, wrong view

etc., as good or excellent. Holding lawful conduct and a religious discipline as best signifies holding as excellent a lawful conduct which is not excellent and as the path of deliverance (corporeal austerities like) placing the five fires on the body, washing again and again in a river, performing (i.e. ritually) the action of a dog or a pig, etc. Dilemma signifies dilemma considering whether the four truths, the Jewels, deliverance, etc. exist or not, whether they are true.

This nescience which apprehends a self is the chief and root of all the passions. Therefore, under the sway of this, the other passions, attachment, hatred, etc. come into being, and if the passions are present, there come the various virtuous and non-virtuous acts which bring about circuiting the round of existence. If the passions are absent, even though one performs whatever acts of body speech and mind, they are unable to bring about birth in the round of existence, - for example, it is said to be just as there is no production of a sprout from a dry barley (seed) deprived of moisture. Therefore, these passions are the foremost of enemies doing injury to oneself. The inner enemy, the passions, is the worst of enemies without comparison to any outer enemy whatsoever. In one's life, even though all the gods, humans, asuras, etc. arise as one's enemy, if one does not let one's mind come under the power of the passions, they merely do injury to this life of one, but, however bad they are, they cannot do anything else other than being able to deprive the vital force of this life. The inner enemy, the passions, having put one into the fire of the hell-denzens for eons, can bring one to cooking etc. Therefore, a person striving for deliverance, must be as careful as possible to subdue this inner enemy.

Then, the so-called "arising of all which is acts": - these acts which are motivated by the passions are both mental actions and deliberative actions. What are these so-called mental actions? These are the thought which thinks to do such and such an act of body or of speech (and) has the function of enjoining action of body or speech. "Deliberative action" signifies the three, virtuous, non-virtuous, and indeterminate acts of body and speech which are motivated by the (above) mentality. Now these acts (i.e. mental and deliberative) are the three called "meritorious acts" such as the virtuous acts (effecting) birth in the fortunate destinies of the desire world, and "demeritorious acts" such as the non-virtuous acts (effecting) birth in the evil destinies,

and "non-mobile acts" such as actions (effecting) birth as a god of the higher regions. Why are the virtuous acts of the desire world called meritorious acts, and the virtues (leading to) the higher regions called non-mobile acts? The maturation result of the virtues of the desire world, since it ripens also in the life of those gone to the evil destinies, is mobile. For example - once born as an animal on account of not keeping the lawful conduct of avoiding the ten non-virtues, since there will come in (that) life of an evil destiny greater food, drink, resources etc. as the result of having given gifts etc. the previous life, it (i.e. a work of merit) is called mobile. These virtuous acts (leading to) the higher regions, since they ripen only in their own sphere without ripening in other lives or spheres of fruition, are called non-mobile. Again, these actions are threefold, action experienced in the present, action experienced on birth, and action experienced at another reckoning time. Action experienced in the present signifies the fruition in this life of the maturation result of having performed a virtuous or non-virtuous act of extremely great strength, for example, like the fruition in later life of the results of works accumulated in earlier life. Again of this action, since it is of a much greater force, most of the results once started in this life, will ripen in the future life. The act experienced after a rebirth (is) of a little smaller force than the act experienced in the present, (and) signifies those acts, the fruition of which, will be experienced in the next birth. Those called "experienced after another reckoning of time", smaller in force than the acts experienced after a birth, signify acts which will be experienced from the life after the next on. Therefore, in general whatever acts are of a greater force or heaviness, the fruition comes earlier, and if the acts are equal in weight, those acts to which one is more acclimatized come to ripen first, and again, the one which one did earlier will ripen first.

Again, this action is classified also as threefold: precipitative action, effective action, and complementary action. So-called precipitative action signifies the act, virtuous or non-virtuous, which is the depositor first of the mere seed of taking birth in one of whichever of the six kinds of destinies, human etc. It is like the example of first planting the seed. The so-called effective action signifies the action which effects directly the resultant birth through energizing the potential (i.e.) that which has been deposited earlier as a seed by the precipitative action. This is like, after a seed has been deposited, the coming forth of a sprout

directly upon the earlier (planted) seed's potential's being energized by water and heat etc. The complementary action signifies the action through which come the various other results of happiness and misery in that life, after one has taken a birth in the fortunate destinies or the evil destinies, in dependence upon the two, the precipitating action and the effective action. For example - a puppy which we treat with love and affection - even though he is born as a brute, an evil destiny, - on account of a non-virtuous precipitating action, - he is loved by a man, given savory food, and is cherished like his own child, and the passage of his life is happy in mental and bodily comfort. Likewise, there is also a taking of birth as a human, one gone to a fortunate destiny, (and) even though this life of one arises on account of a virtuous precipitative action, during the human life the body has pain, one's resources are robbed by others, and there come various miseries like being the least of servants always imposed on by others; since these are the effects of non-virtues, the non-virtuous acts which are the cause of the arising of those (above) are called complementary action. Therefore, birth in the round has these four: precipitation by a virtuous precipitative action, and complement by a non-virtuous complementary action: - like the passage of life in misery once born as a human; and, complement by a virtuous complementary action to precipitation by a non-virtuous precipitative action, like the passage of the life in mental and bodily happiness such as a brute, the (above) puppy; and precipitation by a non-virtuous precipitative action and complement by a non-virtuous complementary action, like a denizen of hell; and precipitation by a virtuous precipitative action and complement by a virtuous complementary action, like a god of the higher regions. In brief, - if one does not perceive well the objectionableness of the round of existences, by reflecting on the disadvantages of the truth of misery, there is not developed a strong attitude of longing to be delivered from the round, and even though one develops this, if one does not understand the way of circuiting the round of existence under the power of action and the passions, (i.e. the truth of) the arising of all, it is impossible for a person wishing for deliverance from this round to understand the way of avoiding at the root the causes of the round; therefore, it is necessary for a person wishing for deliverance from this round to develop a pure thought of renunciation and a great depression towards these two truths of the cause and effect (of misery) from the point of view of the round of existences. The Lord Tsong Kha Pa also says this in his songs of experience: "Understand by what one is

... in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Seventeen.
tied to the round. Make use of depression and renunciation
of the world since one doesn't know the way of cutting the
root of the round if he doesn't reflect the steps of entry
in the round, the (truth of the) all arising, and doesn't
produce an actual striving for emancipation. I also have
practised yoga thus. May also you who desire emancipation
do the same."

[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]

A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Seventeen.

- 1 ལྷན་འབྲུག་བའོན་པ་ཟེར་བའོན་གང་འདྲ་ཞིག་ལ་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་དགོས་པ་
ཡིན།
- 2 ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གང་འདྲས་གང་འདྲས་ཡོད་པ་ཡིན།
- 3 ལྷན་འབྲུག་ཡིན་ཀྱང་ཟེར་གཤམ་ཡིན།
- 4 ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་གྱི་ཡོད་གང་འདྲས་ཡིན།
- 5 ལྷན་འབྲུག་ལ་ཟེར་བའོན་གང་འདྲ་ཞིག་ལ་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་ཡོད་པ་ཡིན།
- 6 ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལྷན་འབྲུག་ལ་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་ཡོད་པ་ཡིན་པ། དེ་ཚོ་གཤམ་གཤམ་ཡིན།
- 7 ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་
ཡིན་པ་ལྟར།
- 8 ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་གྱི་གཤམ་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་གང་འདྲ་ཡིན།
- 9 ལས་ལ་སེམས་ལ་ལའི་ལས་དང་བསམ་ལའི་ལས་ཟེར་བ་གཉིས་
འདྲུག་གི་ དེ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གཤམ་ཡིན།
- 10 འདྲིལ་ལའི་དགེ་བའི་ལས་དེ་ཚོར་བསོད་ནམས་ཀྱི་ལས་དང་། རམས་
གི་ལའི་དགེ་བའི་ལས་ལ་མི་གཤམ་ལའི་ལས་ཟེར་བའི་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་
ཡིན་པ་ལྟར།
- 11 ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ལས་ཟེར་བ་གཤམ་ཡིན།
- 12 ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ལས་
གཉིས་ཀྱི་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གང་འདྲ་ཟེར་བའོན་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ཡིན།
- 13 ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལ་ལས་འདྲ་མི་འདྲ་མང་པོ་བསམས་ལའི་ལས་ཟེར་བ་
ཀྱི་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ལོ་ལྔ་འདྲིལ་མོངས་ཟེར་བའོན་ལ་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ཡོད་པ་ལྟར།
- 14 འཕེན་ལྷན་ཀྱི་ལས་དང་འབྲུག་ལྷན་ཀྱི་ལས་གཉིས་ལ་ལྷན་འབྲུག་གི་ཡོད་པ་ལྟར།

ལོགས་ཕྱི་དྲུག་པ་མེ་བ་དེ་ཚོ་དག་འགྲོ་གི་ཡོད་པ་དེད། དེ་ལྟར་ཡང་ལྷུང་ལྷུང་ཆགས་ཆགས་
 གཏོང་རྒྱུ་འབྲིང་བ་དེ་ཚོ་དག་འགྲོ་བ་དང་། དེ་ལྟར་དྲུག་པ་ལེ་... དྲུག་ལྷུ་མོ་གོས་
 ལོགས་གི་གཏོང་ལ་བཟུང་བ་དེ་ཚོ་དག་ཡང་ཐངས་ཤོས་ལང་པོ་འོ་མོ་ལྷུ་ལྷུ་རྒྱུ་དེད་...
 པོ་འོ་བར་འཁྲུང་གོས་པ་བར་བཞིན་དེད། དེ་འདྲར་ཡིན་ཚོ། སྤང་བྱེད་མོངས་
 པོ་འོ་ལྷོ་བ་པ་རྒྱུང་པ་ལ་འདྲ་ཚོད་དཀར་ལོས་ལྱིད་བར་གོས་མ་ཚོད་སྤང་དང་མོམ་
 སྤང་ཚུ་བ་གཞིས་དང་། མ་ཚོད་སྤང་ལ་བེད་བཞིན་མོ་མོ་ལ་དམིགས་པ་འོ་ལམས་
 གོང་འོག་གི་མ་ཚོད་སྤང་བ་རྒྱུང་དང་། མོམ་སྤང་ལ་འདྲ་ཆེན་པོ་དང་འབྲིང་དང་རྒྱུ་
 རྒྱུ་ལྷུ་ལ་དང་དེ་དེ་ལ་འདྲ་ཆེན་པོ་འོ་ཆེན་པོ་ཟེར་བ་སོགས་ཆེ་འབྲིང་རྒྱུང་གསུ་
 དེ་བྱས་ཁམས་གསུ་ལ་དགུ་ལ་དགུ་དེད། དེ་འདྲར་ཟེར་བྱས་རྒྱས་པར་དེ་ལྟེ་མ་
 བཟུང་རྒྱུ་ལྱད་གུ་ལ་སོགས་པ་ལྟར་པོ་དེ་རྒྱུ་ཡོད། སྤང་བྱེད་མོངས་པོ་འོ་ལྷོ་བ་པ་
 ལ་བེད་ལོས་ལྷུ་དེ་ཚོ་སྤངས་པོ་འོ་འགོ་ག་བེད་བཟུང་རྒྱུ་ལྱད་གུ་དང་། དེ་ཚོ་སྤང་བྱེད་
 ལྷོ་མཐུ་ལམ་བེད་ལྟ་ཡང་བཟུང་རྒྱུ་ལྱད་གུ་དེ་ལྷུ་གས་སོགས་པེ་ལ་ལྟ་མ་ཚོད་...
 པས། དེ་དག་བཟུང་རྒྱུ་ཚོད་གུ་འོ་ ལྷོ་ལ་ལམ་ཟང་པ་ལྟམས་དང་བཟས། ལེས་
 གསུ་དང་པ་རྒྱ་བུ་ལང་པོ་ཡོད་པ་དེད། དེ་ཚོ་འོ་མོ་ལེ་བཟུ་འོ་ལ་བེད་ལྟམས་དྲུགས་
 འགྲོ་བ་ཡིན་ཚོད་དེ་འགོ་ག་བེད་བཟུ་མོད་དེ་ཚོ་ལྷུ་ལྷུ་།
 བཞིན་པ་ལམ་ལྱི་བེད་ལ་ཟེར་བཞི། མཐུ་བ་གསུ་ལ་ལང་ལྷུ་དང་ལ་གཞས་པོ་
 འམ་གས་པོ་ལྷོ་བྱི་བཟུ་བ་བ་གསུ་ལྱི་ལྷུ་ལྷུ་པོ་ལམ་ཐམས་ཅད་ལ་ཚོ་
 ལྱི་ཡོད་པ་དེད། དེ་ཡང་ལྱི་བཟུ་ལམ་ལྱི་ལོགས་མཐུ་བ་བཟུ་བ་བ་གསུ་ལྱི་ལང་...
 བཟུ་ལོད། བཟུ་བ་བ་གསུ་ལྷོ་བཞི། ལྷོ་ལྱི་ལམ་ལྱི་བཟུ་བ་བ། དེ་དེ་
 འོ་ལྱི་བཟུ་བ་བ། ལོགས་པ་བྱི་བཟུ་བ་བ་གསུ་ལྷོ་དེ་ལ་ཚོ་ལྱི་ཡོད། དེ་
 ལང་གས་འཁོར་བ་ལས་ཐང་པོ་ལམས་མཚོད་རྒྱ་ལྷུ་དང་ལེ་བེད་གཞི་ལྟེ་དང་...
 ལོ་ལྷུ་ལྷུ་ལྷོ་གས་པོ་ལོགས་པ་བྱི་བཟུ་བ་བ་དེ་དེད། དེ་ག་དེ་དེ་ཟེར་བ།

LESSON EIGHTEEN

VOCABULARY

ལྷོག་པ་	to reach the source
ལྲོ་བའི་གསལ་ལ་	obvious
གཤམ་	depth
ལྷོག་པ་ལོག་	clothes, garment
ལྷོག་པ་	stain
ལྷོག་པ་	to soak
ལྷོག་པ་	soap
ལྷོག་པ་	rub, rubbing

དག་པ་	clean, pure
ཆུ་ཆུ་	the kneading of clothes etc. in water
ལྷོག་པ་	lamp
ལྷོག་པ་	a general notion
ལྷོག་པ་	remainder

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

ལྷོག་པ་

riddable; qualities to be got rid of (see note)

ལྷོག་པ་ལྷོག་པ་

the mental continuum

ལྷོག་པ་ལྷོག་པ་

for a long time

ལྷོག་པ་ལྷོག་པ་

how difficult

ལྷོག་པ་ལྷོག་པ་

riddance or riddances by seeing; seeing riddance

ལྷོག་པ་ལྷོག་པ་

riddance or riddances by meditation; meditation riddance

ལྷོག་པ་ལྷོག་པ་

the best, the superior

NOTE

The scheme of the subjects of the Tibetan Lecture may be seen from the following:

1: Path of accumulation

ལྷན་པའི་ལམ་

PATHS OF AN
ORDINARY INDIVIDUAL

ལྷན་པའི་ལམ་

2: Path of joining

ལྷན་པའི་ལམ་

3: Path of seeing

མཐོང་ལམ་

8 riddances by
seeing

མཐོང་ལམ་

4: Path of meditation

ལྷན་པའི་ལམ་

81 riddances by
meditation

ལྷན་པའི་ལམ་

PATHS OF THE
ARYA

ལྷན་པའི་ལམ་

5: The Path of no further
training

ལྷན་པའི་ལམ་

Cessation, being a manifold, signifies all the various passions and nesciences which are definitely extirpated by means of the Arya path. The two former subdivisions of the path are a preparation for this. The path of accumulation commences with a devoted attention to the teaching of Buddhism and culminates in the attainment of mental stabilization (*ལྷོ་གནས་*). With the attainment of mental stabilization one commences the path of joining which is principally the practice of transcendent seeing (*ལྷོ་གསལ་*), which has as its object the Truths. The path of joining culminates with the direct yogic perception of the Truths, and is called the path of joining because it directly reaches or joins the Arya paths which commence with the path of seeing. These two former paths are also characterized as "the stages of adhesion through faith" (*མཐོ་བ་ལྷོ་བའི་ལ་*) because until the attainment of the path of seeing there is no direct perception of the truths. With the attainment of the path of seeing, there commences the practice of bringing about the definitive extirpation of the passions and nesciences through recourse to meditation on the Truths. This extirpation commences with the grosser and easier to get rid of. These are called "riddances by seeing" or "seeing riddances" (*མཐོ་བ་ལྷོ་བ་*), and are classified as eight, two for each of the four Truths according to whether the qualities which are got rid of by seeing the Truths, belong to the lower region (*ཁམས་འོག་མ་*) or to the higher region (*ཁམས་གོང་མ་*). With the elimination of these eight, which

are further schematized into 112, there commences the practice of the extirpation of the more subtle and difficult to eradicate passions and nesciences called "riddances by meditation" or "meditation riddances" (རྣམ་ཐོང་). These are schematized as 81 from the point of view of a ninefold great-great, middle-great, and small-great up to a great-small, middle-small, and a small-small, belonging to each of the nine subdivision of the three regions (བཅའ་ལྔ་ལྔ་). With the extirpation of the smallest of the small belonging to the "world summit" (ལྷོ་མཚོ་), the highest of the four realms of the formless realm, the path of meditation is climaxed and completed. With the final completion of the attainment of all the seeing riddances and meditation riddances, there is obtained the final level and fruition of the path, the path of no further training.

TRANSLATION

- I. Well then. What is the meaning of the so-called truth of cessation?
- G. As for the truth of cessation: - here, since the action which is the cause directly producing the misery of the round and, also the root of this action, is found in the end to be the passions, the getting rid of all the passions of the three worlds from the root as well as the deliverance which frees from misery and its cause, is that truth of cessation which is desired as the ultimate attainment at the time of the middle individual. Generally speaking, "the truth of cessation", not signifying only emancipation, signifies that part which is annihilation or riddance from the root of whatsoever major or minor obscurations, attachment etc., the riddables, by recourse to meditating whatsoever Aryan path of the Hinayana or Mahayana. Therefore, the truth of cessation has many subdivisions to be made from the point of view of the riddables. The reason is that these obscurations, attachment etc., rather than being got rid of gradually cannot all be got rid of immediately at one time, since, for a long time, from beginninglessness, there has been a habituation of the mental continuum to these. Therefore, the more obvious passions of attachment etc. of great strength are got rid of earlier. Then the middling are got rid of. Finally, the small or subtle (which are) difficult to recognise, residing in an unobvious manner in the depth of the mind, must be got rid of through recourse for a long time to a strong effort of meditation. For example, it's just as when we wash clothes, if they have been having many stains for a long time, having first soaked them in water, one puts in soap, and when one does some rubbing, the larger stains on the outside come clean. Then, when one kneads and rubs, the middling become clean, and then, in order to clean those residing in the depth of the clothes, it is necessary to wash them for a long time by way of many methods. Therefore, (of) the riddables, even just the obscurations of the passions has two, called "riddance by seeing" and "riddance by meditation", and this distinction is made from the point of view of how difficult it is to get rid of them (i.e. the passion obscurations); riddance has the eight seeing riddances of the higher and lower realms, which have as their object each of the four truths; riddance by meditation also has a great, a middle, and a small, and the nine levels of the three worlds each has nine making a small, a middle, and a

great to each of these (above) designated "the great of the great" etc. When one thus divides extensively, there are many divisions to be made, an eighty-nine etc. From the point of view of the passion obscurations, the riddables are the eighty-nine fold truth of cessation which is riddance, and there is a method of dividing into eighty-nine also, the truth of the path, which is the means of effecting the riddance of these. For example, the Abhidharmakośa says, "These are eighty-nine fold, both the paths of freedom and their exhaustions."; there are many statements such as this. If one formulates these in fine detail here, since it would become too extensive, now just this is made on the truth of cessation.

The fourth (truth), the so-called truth of the path, signifies all the paths which are included in the three disciplines belonging to the Aryan individual who abides on any of the paths of the three vehicles. Again, generally speaking, every kind of path is comprehended within the three disciplines, and the so-called three disciplines are the discipline of a lawful conduct, a discipline of a mental concentration and the discipline of a wisdom. Of these, the best means of deliverance from the round of existences, is the discipline of a wisdom which perceives no-self as directly (before the eyes). The reason is, that as explained above, the cause of circuiting the round of existences, is the two, action and the passions, and the root also of that action is the passions, the three poisons, and since the nescience apprehending a self is the root also of the three poisons, this apprehending a self cannot be stopped even by another path without the wisdom which directly perceives opposing this way of apprehending. For example, it is just as in overcoming directly a formidable darkness, it cannot be overcome without an illuminating fire. Again, for example, by way of dispelling darkness, as by a lamp, in order to make clear form and color, etc., just as it is necessary for the lamp itself to be steady and clear without being moved etc., by the wind,- by way of overcoming the darkness of apprehending a self etc. by the wisdom which directly perceives the absence of a self in order to perceive clearly the actual condition of "the person", it is necessary to develop the discipline of a mental focus by which the mind remains steadily and one-pointedly on its object, without being moved by excitement and (the flux of) thought etc. Also, to produce a steady motionless mental focus, it is necessary to remain accordingly, in the discipline of a lawful conduct which prevents the movement of body, speech, and mind to non-virtuous spheres. Therefore, this lawful conduct is the basis also

both the other disciplines. Not only that, this for example, - just as this great earth is the support of the birth, and survival, and growth etc. of living creatures and non-living creatures (like) grass, trees, leaves, flowers, etc., this lawful conduct also is taught to be the support of all the virtuous qualities which are comprehended by a high condition (in the world) and the highest good. Moreover, when at this time of the middle individual, by way of remaining in a faultless superior lawful conduct, one meditates the truth of the path, one makes as the principal object of meditation the actual cause and effect of entry into the round (i.e. the first two truths) and of turning away from the round (i.e. the latter two truths) by way of the four truths, as explained above, and when among these (i.e. the four truths) one makes as the principal object of meditation, the concentrated gnosis of the Aryan, which directly understands the meaning of no-self, a specific of the truth of misery; then, one principally gets rid of the passion obscurations of holding to a self of an individual etc. Again, generally speaking, the path which gets rid of the obscurations makes five paths each for each of the (three) vehicles, and there are fifteen. The so-called five paths are the path of accumulation, the path of joining, the path of seeing, the path of meditation, and the path of no (further) training. Both the path of accumulation and the path of joining are the path of an ordinary individual, and three, the path of seeing, the path of meditation, and the path of no further training are the path of the Aryan. Therefore, the two former paths although they cannot directly get rid of the obscurations, are a method of getting rid of them indirectly. The reason is that at the time of the paths of accumulation and of joining, other than meditating the actuality of the four truths by way of conceiving them after the fashion of a general mental image and a notion, one is unable to meditate them directly; therefore, at the time of these (paths) it is impossible also directly to get rid of the obscurations of self-apprehension etc. At the time of the three Aryan paths, it is possible to get rid of, from the root, the obscurations and seeds of their own respective riddables, by understanding the absence of self as directly before the eyes; therefore, the remainder, the paths of seeing etc. must be posited as the actual truth of the path. Moreover, at the time of the path of seeing, by virtue of seeing directly for the first time the actuality of the truths, there are eight passion obscurations (which are) the seeing riddances of the higher and lower regions, viz., riddances by seeing misery,

riddances by seeing the arising of all, riddances by seeing cessation, and then riddances by seeing path; - or if one further divides these extensively, there will be got rid of a whole one hundred and twelve. After this, at the time of the path of meditation, by way of doing meditation on the actuality of the four truths as already directly perceived, a division also into eighty-one passion obscurations (which are) the meditation riddances of the three regions is the nine steps of the path of meditation, and by degrees, there is a getting rid of these eighty-one. The path of no further training signifies the riddance from the root, without exception, of all the passion obscurations, inclusive of the seeing riddances and meditation riddances of the three regions, by recourse to the two, the path of seeing and the path of meditation. Since this (path of no further training) has overcome without exception the enemies of the passions, the person obtaining this is called "an enemy slayer" (Arhant). At this time, since the passions are exhausted, even though there is action, it cannot take a birth in the round, - for example - just as a barley seed deprived of moisture cannot produce a sprout. Therefore, at this time one comes to be called an obtainer of the deliverance which frees completely from the round. For the middle individual the path roughly is thus.

ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥
 ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥ ॐ नमो भगवते वासुदेवाय ॥

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

- the six Paramitās, the six perfections
- the three bodies
- Śrāvaka and Pratyekabuddha
- passion obscurations
- knowledge obscurations
- some portion or part of

LESSON NINETEEN

VOCABULARY

ཉེ་མེད་མེད་པར་	without partiality, impartially
འཇགས་པ་	disposition
ལྟོ་མཚན་པ་	man (in contradistinction to woman)
ལྗང་	line, row
བཀོད་པར་བཀོད་པར་	praise
ཤུགས་ལྡན་པ་	to sleep
དང་ལྡན་པ་	immeasurable, incalculable

གློ་བུ་ལོ་བཞོན་པ་	<u>Ganda-vhyuha</u>
ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་	<u>Bodhicāryāvatarce</u>
བཞོན་པ་ (མ་ལོན་པ་)	(un) feigned
འདྲ་མཚན་	neutral
བརྟེན་མེད་པ་	indifference; evenmindedness

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

དམ་པ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་	the six Paramitās, the six perfections
ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་	"revelment of kindness"
ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་	the three bodies
ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་	Sravaka and Pratyekabuddha
ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་ (= ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་ལོ་བཞོན་པ་)	passion obscurations
ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་	knowledge obscurations
ལྷོ་ལྷོ་བཞོན་པ་	some portion or part of
	an attitude of hatred

མཚན་མོན་པ་	a small part
གཞན་གྱི་མཚན་པ་	the objective(s) of others
མཚན་པ་ལ་བཞག་པ་	to say nothing of . . . , putting aside . . .
མཚན་པ་རྒྱ་ལ་	one's own objective(s)
ལུང་ལྷན་ལྷན་གྱི་མཚན་པ་	the mind to enlightenment
མཚན་པ་གྲུབ་པ་ལྷན་པ་	(H) body, speech, and mind
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	son of the conquerors
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	the ten directions
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	without interruption, unin- terruptedly
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	worthy of a respectful salute
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	basically
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	seven cause and effect precepts
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	sameness of oneself and others and exchange of oneself and others
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	"understanding as mother"
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	"mindfulness of kindness"
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	"repayment of kindness"
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	"affectionate love"
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	great compassions
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	"a pure superior thought" or attitude"
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	to bear the burden, to carry the responsibility
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	enjoyment, pleasure
ལྷན་པ་ལྷན་པ་	an attitude of hatred

NOTES

1. རང་དོན་ and གཞིན་དོན་ - "one's own objective and the objective of others" - The attainment of one's own aim or objective refers chiefly to the perfect realization of the removal of the two obscurations (ལྷོ་གཉེན་), whereas the attainment of the aim or objective of the others refers to the perfection of the capacity of assisting others particularly in the attainment of their own objective as above.
2. ལྷོ་གཉེན་ལ་ཆེན་པོ་གཉིས་ - "the two major systems" - the first, the system of the seven cause and effect precepts, belongs mainly to the teaching of Maitreya-Asanga and was given its final formulation by the ācārya Atīsa. The second, the system of exchange of oneself and others, belongs mainly to Nāgārjuna and his Mādhyamika followers and was given its final formulation by the ācārya Santideva.
3. རྩ་བུ་རེ་བཞིན་ "at each time of acting as mother". རེ་བཞིན་ is an elliptical expression always denoting at each (time).

TRANSLATION

- I. At the time of the great individual what things are there about the path which is chiefly practised?
- G. That which is practised at the time of the great individual is, generally speaking, the path of the Mahayana and its result. Again one may reduce this to three, (i.e.) the development of the mind to enlightenment (which is) the gate of entry to the Mahayana, and once this mind is developed, the way of training in the six perfections etc., a Bodhisattva's actions, and through recourse to this, the way of obtaining the three bodies, the state of a Buddha, the final result. To explain just briefly these three respectively: - Moreover, having recourse earlier to training in the path practice of the small and middle individual, one has oneself got rid of, from the root, the passions and acts which are the cause of birth in the evil transmigrations and in the round of existences, and even though it is possible to obtain a state which is free like the Arhantship of the Sravakas and Pratyekabuddhas, Arhants such as these, except for the passion obscurations which are the cause of circuiting the round of existences, are not able to get rid of the so-called knowledge obscurations which obstruct knowing all knowables just as they are. Therefore, since they do not get rid of all the riddables rather than merely some, and since they cannot know just as they are all knowables without exception, these have not, except for some portion, completed (the process of) relinquishing and understanding, and therefore, these, to say nothing of the objectives of others, have not obtained the completion of even their own objective. Not only that, once they are distracted by the felicity of their own pacification, they are deprived of the mind to enlightenment and the great compassion which proceeds impartially to all other living creatures (and which is) the cause of doing this (i.e. their own objectives) as well as doing the vast objectives of the others, and they do not obtain the perfection of the capacity which is able to accomplish spontaneously without effort the vast objectives of living creatures according to their disposition and wish by way of unlimited psychic powers of body, speech, and mind.

Therefore, it is necessary definitely to obtain the state of a Buddha who completes his own objective and (that) of the others. In order to obtain this, without entry to its method, the path of the Mahayana, there is no method of obtaining it.

Now, for entering into the path of the Mahayana, its gate of entry is the so-called "mind to enlightenment". The reason is that without the mind to enlightenment, that person, however great his virtuous qualities or riddances and of understanding, cannot fit into the line of the Bodhisattvas or of the great vehicle. A man or woman, a layman or monk, a god or a human, whatever may be his walk of life, whenever he obtains the mind to enlightenment, that person fits into the great vehicle and becomes as the object called "a Bodhisattva, a son of the conquerors" which is praised etc. by the Buddhas of the ten directions. Not only that, beginning with the development of the mind to enlightenment, that person during all his behavior of sleeping, eating food, walking, sitting etc. increases merits without interruption, and beginning with the development of the mind to enlightenment, he becomes worthy of the homage of all men and gods. Thus, for example, - like the burning of the world in a single instant by that fire called "the fire of the ends of time" at the time of the destruction of the eons by fire, that mind is taught in sutras like the Gandavyūha and in many sastras like the Bodhicāryāvātara to be of immeasurable benefit (like) being able to overcome many extremely powerful evils in each single instant etc.

- I. Well then, what are the methods of developing this so-called "mind to enlightenment"? What basically is the mind of enlightenment itself?
- G. Well, to discuss two methods together, - the method of developing the mind to enlightenment has two major systems. There are taught both a method of developing the mind to enlightenment by way of seven cause and effect precepts and a way of developing the mind to enlightenment by way of sameness and exchange of oneself and the others. Among these the first method of developing the mind by way of seven cause and effect precepts, makes both the way of developing six cause precepts and by recourse to these the way of developing the mind to enlightenment (itself as) the effect, (the seventh); if one asks then what are the six cause precepts, the six signify: understanding as mother, mindfulness of kindnesses, repayment of kindnesses, affectionate love, great compassion, and the pure superior thought. Then the so-called mind to enlightenment, (which is) the result, signifies the unfeigned attitude of wishing oneself to effect the happiness of all living creatures upon not bearing living creatures' suffering misery, and to obtain the state of a Buddha for the purpose of this, upon seeing the need to clear away the misery. Therefore, to produce a mind such as this, before the pure superior thought, it is

necessary to develop the wish that all living creatures be free from misery, and moreover, a great compassion to bear by oneself the responsibility of their being free from misery. Also, to produce a great compassion bearing a burden such as this, it is necessary to develop beforehand the so-called affectionate love which has as its object all living creatures (i.e.) the thought having the aspect of treasuring and cherishing living creatures from ones heart. The reason is that - for example - generally, when, say an enemy of ours, has misery in addition to not wishing it and not enduring it, there comes a kind of enjoyment; this (enjoyment) is elicited not only by the absence of a cherishing love which cherishes this enemy from the heart, but also by the presence of an attitude of hatred for him. At the time when misery comes to ones best friend, say ones mother, the coming to one of an attitude of not bearing this is elicited by the presence of an affectionate love which holds the mother dear from the heart, and again, by the force of greater or lesser strength of a heartfelt affection, that much there comes a greater or lesser strength of not enduring it when she comes to have suffering. Likewise, when one sees the suffering of a neutral living creature who has not been made either a friend or foe in this life, there comes an indifferent attitude neither too happy nor too unhappy; this arises since there is neither much heartfelt affection to this (creature) nor much disaffection. Now, as for the method of achieving a cherishing affection such as this, three (things) are taught: understanding as a mother, mindfulness of kindnesses, and repayment of kindnesses. Since the mother is like the principal friend in this life, upon first meditating an understanding which regards all living creatures as ones mother, afterwards it is necessary to develop an affectionate love through recourse to meditating the way in which (all living creatures) each time they served as mother, performed kindnesses just as the mother of this life has taken care of one with kindness, and (to meditating) the pure thought which wishes to repay the kindnesses of these.

མའི་ལྷགས་དང་། བདག་གཞན་ལ་བཞུགས་པའི་ལྷགས་ལྟེ་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་
 མའི་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་
 ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་
 ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་
 ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་
 ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་
 ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་
 ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་ལྷགས་

||

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

- the world sunset
- the six kinds of beings (i.e. man, gods, sauras, hell-demons, animal, and pretas)
- womb-born
- egg-born
- to decide, to determine
- protection
- to the extent of one's understanding
- to the extent of one's ability

LESSON TWENTY

VOCABULARY

ལུགས་ལུགས་	logical reasons
ལོ་ལོ་	experience
མཉམ་	even
གསེན་	nest
ཆུ་ལྗོད་	a small piece of wood, twig
ལྷ་	egg
ལྷ་མོ་	kind

རྒྱུ་ལྡན་	to stir up, to incite
ལུགས་ལུགས་	a madman
ལོ་ལོ་	to step
ལྷ་ལྷ་	notes on the <u>Lam Rim</u>
ལྷ་ལྷ་	effort, exertion

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

ལྷ་ལྷ་	the world summit
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	the six kinds of beings (i.e. men, gods, asura, hell-denizen, animal, and preta)
ལྷ་ལྷ་	womb-born
ལྷ་ལྷ་	egg-born
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	to decide, to determine
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	protection
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	to the extent of one's understanding
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	to the extent of one's ability

ལྷ་ལྷ་	the world summit
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	the six kinds of beings (i.e. men, gods, asura, hell-denizen, animal, and preta)
ལྷ་ལྷ་	womb-born
ལྷ་ལྷ་	egg-born
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	to decide, to determine
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	protection
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	to the extent of one's understanding
ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	to the extent of one's ability

NOTES

1. ལྷོ་རྩོད་ "the world summit" variously called the absorption of 'neither perception nor non-perception' (འདུ་ཤེས་མེད་ འདུ་ཤེས་མེད་མིན་) is the highest of the four levels of the formless world, and the highest position attainable by means of the mundane path (འཇིག་རྟེན་པའི་ལམ་).
See Lesson 5, Note 8.
2. འབྲེ་བ་དྲི་གསལ་བྱུང་། "the six kinds of creatures", i.e. the creatures of the six realms of the round of existences, hell-dwellers, etc.
3. ལྟོད་ - ལྟོད་ the verb meaning "to experience" may sometimes be used with other verbs as a kind of particle indicating past tense, i.e. when the agent of the action is an animate and not an inanimate object.
4. ལམ་བློན་ - ལམ་བློན་ is the title of a commentary on Tsong kha pa's Lam Rim. It represents an oral commentary of Pha bong kha as set down in notes by Khri bzang rinpoche, one of the tutors of the present Dalai Lama.

TRANSLATION

- I. It is said that it is necessary in the beginning to meditate as mother, isn't it? So, how ought one to meditate this?
- G. At the time of meditating this so-called "understanding as mother", first through recourse to the arguments which establish a past and a future birth such as are set forth in the Pramāṇavārttika etc., it is necessary to find a stable ascertainment and trust about the way of taking birth that there is no body of (any of) the six kinds of creatures of which it may be said "I was not born as such and such", (ascertaining) by way of understanding, that birth has no beginning or number via reflection on the manner in which all living creatures have from beginninglessness taken birth in this round of existences from the height of the world summit to the depths of the Avici hell. When one has obtained this (above trust), then, for instance, the majority of us, the womb-born and the egg-born, humans and gods etc., needs each a mother, and just as births such as these are without a number or a bound to their beginning, the mothers also of each of these is without a count or limit; and once one makes it thus, finally one does not find even one to show of whom it may be said, "such a creature as this has never functioned as my mother"; therefore, all living creatures have just been one's mother, and each of these also has functioned as one's mother a countless number of times; having determined in favor of this notion, it is necessary to meditate (thus) until the production of the experience. Then, the second is the mindfulness of kindness. The reason is that if one previously understands that all living creatures are one's mother, they have not merely functioned as one's mother; for instance, it is necessary to meditate that all living creatures are just one's own kind mother by way of reflection that at each time of functioning as mother, just as one has been taken care of with kindness by one's mother in this life, each living creature has also done thus at the time of functioning as one's mother. Moreover, as to the way of being taken care of with kindness by one's mother in this life: - first at the time when one is in the mother's belly, the mother to the extent of her ability avoids all faults of possible danger to her offspring in all her behavior of eating, drinking, walking, sitting, sleeping, etc., and to the extent of her ability she takes the safeguards of eating food which is beneficial to her offspring etc. Then, in brief, after birth also, the mother secures every benefit and happiness for her offspring to the extent of her knowledge, to the extent of her ability, making (her

offspring) more dear than even her own life, without being reluctant about any physical toil, or mental misery, or expense of things, etc.; through many ways, (the above) and the dispelling of all misery and harm, if one considers the way of having been taken care of by kindness, its measure is unbounded. It is just as we have seen and are seeing, that even the most dumb animals have this way of the mother's fostering (her offspring) as dearer than even her own life. For example, a bird, - first at the time of building a nest for the purposes of the offspring, in order to accumulate its material, she goes a great distance to search, and carries grass and sticks etc. piece by piece, and has the toil of having to make, say, a hundred trips back and forth every day, and similarly, when the eggs are laid, she must furnish (them) protection for many days, without opportunity to eat foodstuff herself, and also, once they have been born, she has to go many times to search for foodstuff to feed her many offspring, and when an enemy appears, for the purpose of furnishing protection to her offspring - if the enemy is of a size of which she is capable, goes without saying - but even if the enemy is of a size of which she is incapable, she will give up her own life, and as we have seen and are seeing, many who having made a fight for the purpose of their offspring have to die themselves; it is necessary to meditate, having reflected on the way in which that all living creatures have done thus (for us) countless times.

As for the third, the so-called repayment of kindness, - there is reflection that it is necessary from the heart to repay this immeasurable kindness done for us by all living creatures previously. Here, for example, in the world, once a kind mother has looked after an only son without regard for any expenses and difficult labor etc. until he can take care of himself, if later the mother herself becomes very wretched and destitute or is blind and without another leader in her blindness, and she were about to fall into a very great danger, an abyss or mire etc., if then, at this time, this son stood by watching without making assistance (and) repayment of kindness out of mindfullness of his mother's kindness, wouldn't he be counted as the most shameless scoundrel. Likewise, if one leaves, without rendering an assistance or repayment of kindness, these living creatures, an old mother who has done immeasurable favors for one, at the time when she is like blind on account of the absence of the eye of wisdom which understands well the virtuous and the non-virtuous, and when she is also without "the good friend" who is like a leader of the blind and shower without perversion of the way of cultivating

and avoidance, and when she is as crazed from a mind always incited by the passions, the three poisons etc., and by way of various evil actions through the three doors, has such a wretched situation of walking, like stepping in the direction of a great fall into the evil transmigrations or the great river of the round of existences, - (if one stood by at this time), since one would be extremely shameless and a scoundral, how would it be right? -: thinking thus, one must meditate until arousing from the heart the wish to repay the kindness of these.

Then the fourth, - this so-called affectionate love signifies a pure attitude possessed of the aspect of holding in esteem and as dear and attractive, all living creatures without partiality, through recourse to the understanding as mother, mindfulness of kindness, and repayment of kindness as were explained above. Moreover, generally, love has both a love possessed of an aspect of affection such as the above and a love which wishes living creatures to have happiness. Without the former, there is no means for the latter's coming; not only that, this affectionate love is the principal direct cause, the sine qua non, of both the great compassion which wishes living beings to be free of misery and the great love which wishes them to have happiness, and by virtue of the greater or lesser strength of this, both love and compassion come to be of a greater or lesser strength; therefore, the technique of practising this also has two specific different systems of practising this, the system of the seven precepts and the system of the sameness and exchange of oneself and the others. It is said in the Lam zin that according to the (oral) precepts of a guru, the latter has the entire practice system of the former, whereas the former does not have the entire practice system of the latter. Whatever many techniques this affectionate love may have, it is necessary to raise it to experience with a great earnestness; this is the most important point.

A. Answer in Tibetan the following questions on Lesson Twenty.

- 1 འོ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་པ་ཏེ་མོ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་
ལྟོ་མོ་ཏེ།
- 2 མོ་མོ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་ཏེ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ཏེ།
- 3 ཏེ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་ཏེ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ཏེ།
- 4 འོ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ།
- 5 མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ།
- 6 འོ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ།
- 7 མོ་མོ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ།
- 8 འོ་མཁུ་མ་ཉེ་མེ་པ་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ་མོ་མེ་ལྱེད་ཏེ།

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

VOCABULARY

ཉེ་ལྷན་ (འདྲ་)	until	ལྲོ་གྲོ་	to restrain
འཕྲུལ་ལས་ (རྩ་)	deeds, actions	བྱང་ལྡན་	Bodhisathvābhūmi
ལྷོད་པ་	to fall	གནོད་མེད་	harm, injury
ལྷོད་པ་	to sink down	དཔྱད་པ་	to infer, to know by inference
ལྷོད་པ་	Śantideva	གསོད་པ་	evil spirit, demon
གྲོང་ཁྱེར་	city	ལྷོད་པ་	to become out of control (like drunk, insane, etc.)
ཐང་ཐང་	material stuff	ལྷོད་པ་	to be drunk
འཇོན་ཁྱེར་	jail, prison	ལྷོད་པ་	many different varieties of; synonym
ཉེ་ལྷན་	destitution, weakness		
ལྷོད་པ་	stinginess, miserliness		

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

འཕྲུལ་ལས་	praise and salutation
ཐང་ཐང་ཐང་ཐང་	the beginning, the middle, and the end
གྲོང་ཁྱེར་	to rise higher; to be elevated
ལྷོད་པ་	water and manure
ལྷོད་པ་	until empty or void

NOTES

1. $\text{འཕགས་པའི་ལྗོངས་} = \text{ཕྱི་རྒྱལ་འཕགས་པ་$
2. ཕྱི་རྒྱལ་ "a son of a conqueror" is a common epithet of a Bodhisattva.
3. འཕགས་པའི་ལྗོངས་ "the body of a Buddha". Here, the word ལྗོངས་ "body" connotes rather the totality of an aggregation, e.g. the body of his compositions, rather than extension. མཁའ་ལྗོངས་ the dharma body or non-corporeal body refers to the manifold of cessation achieved by a Buddha as well as the manifold of the gnostic knowledge which he attains. གཟུགས་ལྗོངས་ the corporeal body signifies the aggregation of corporeal perfections exhibited by a Buddha's physical body as well as the perfection of the physical resources and amenities, like the Buddha field, etc., which a perfect Buddha attains. The corporeal body is further subdivided into ཡོངས་ལྗོངས་ the enjoyment body or sambhogakāya and ལྷུང་ལྗོངས་ the magical creation body or nirmanakāya. The former arises at the time of enlightenment in the Akanisṭra, the highest of the divisions of the fourth dhyana (བསམ་པ་གཏན་འཁྲི་བ་) where it is said to be accessible to Bodhisattvas on the ten stages (བ་འཁྲུ་) and where it enjoys the use of perfect resources. The later is a myriad of magically created bodies many of which were produced before enlightenment while practising the higher of the ten Bodhisattva levels (བ་འཁྲུ་). Thus, by way of example, Amiteyus is the name of the sambhogakaya of a Buddha as he appears in the Akanisṭra, whereas

Amitabha is the name of the nirmanakaya of the same Buddha as he appears in the pure land of Sukhavati.

Also, the ཚོས་སྐུ་ is often called རང་དོན་ཉེ་སྐུ་ , and the གུལྱུགས་སྐུ་ is often called གཞན་དོན་ཉེ་སྐུ་ . These are discussed briefly in Lesson 22.

4. བསོད་ནམས་དང་ཡེ་ཤེས་ཀྱི་ཚོགས་ "the accumulations of merits and of gnosese". The basis for making this distinction is the ཚོས་སྐུ་ and གུལྱུགས་སྐུ་ of a Buddha of which the accumulation of merits and the accumulation of gnosese are the causes respectively.
5. དགོ་རྩ་ . . . གཏོང་ "giving the roots of merits" refers to a cardinal Mahayana practice of turning over of dedicating the merits acquired through one's development of virtues to the enlightenment of all living creatures. This dedication of merits is called འཕྲོ་བ་ or ཡོངས་འཕྲོ་བ་འཕྲོ་བ་ .

Moreover, having countless living creatures as their object, even the Sravakas and Pratyekabuddhas have a compassion which thinks "It is a joy if these were free of misery," and "How would it not be fitting if they were free?" as well as a love which only thinks "How would it not be fitting if these had the happiness of a high condition (in the world) and of the highest good?"; therefore, as merely this is insufficient, this so-called "great compassion" of the great vehicle requires a powerful compassion which wishes for their deliverance with the thought, "I must free all living creatures from misery." Moreover, it is the development of the real great compassion, when, through recourse to reflection on the general and specific miseries of the round of existences, as explained above in the chapter on the small and the middle individual, and to the cultivation of a good attitude from understanding as before

TRANSLATION

Then, the fifth is the so-called "great compassion". Here the Natha Maitreya says that this great compassion is the root of the path of the great vehicle, "Great compassion is accepted as its root.", not only that, it is just as it is also the reason for Candrakirti's needing to pay homage to great compassion in the introduction of the Madhyamikāvātara without paying homage directly to the Buddhas and Bodhisattvas on account of great compassion's being of great importance in the beginning, the middle, and the end for the production of the desirable harvest of Buddhahood, the fruit of the great vehicle. The reason, then, why great compassion is of great importance in the beginning, in the production of the desirable harvest of Buddhahood, is that it is of importance at the beginning as a seed, inasmuch as, this great compassion is the root of producing directly the mind to enlightenment, the gate of entry first to the path of the great vehicle. Then it is of importance in the middle as water and manure, inasmuch as, even having produced the mind to enlightenment and entered into the great vehicle, one must, by the force of great compassion, practise to increase by degrees, the actions of a Bodhisattva, the six perfections etc., for the benefit of others. Then, thirdly, it is of importance at the end as a mature fruit, inasmuch as, even having obtained the fruition, the condition of a Buddha, one would not perform benefits to living creatures, if compassion were absent, and one remains continuously doing immeasurable benefits for living creatures by way of limitless deeds until the round of existence is empty (of living creatures); just roughly, it is thus.

Moreover, having countless living creatures as their object, even the Sravakas and Pratyekabuddhas have a compassion which thinks "It is a joy if these were free of misery," and "how would it not be fitting if they were free?" as well as a love which only thinks "How would it not be fitting if these had the happiness of a high condition (in the world) and of the highest good?"; therefore, as merely this is insufficient, this so-called "great compassion" of the great vehicle requires a powerful compassion which wishes for their deliverance with the thought, "I must free all living creatures from misery." Moreover, it is the development of the real great compassion, when, through recourse to reflection on the general and specific miseries of the round of existences, as explained above in the chapter on the small and the middle individual, and to the cultivation of a good attitude from understanding as mother

up to an affectionate love, there arises by its own power, from the heart to all living creatures without partiality, a nonartificial attitude of wishing, without partiality, all living creatures to be free of such misery, upon beholding living creatures afflicted with the misery of falling into the immense mire of the round of existences, as, for instance, a very affectionate mother of a single son has a nonartificial attitude of wishing from the heart that he be free from it, upon seeing her only son fallen into a mire. When this is produced, there is produced by its own force together with it also a great love wishing living creatures to meet with happiness.

Then, the seventh, the result, the mind to enlightenment: - (The above) having been thus done, when there is developed the attitude which from the heart assumes the burden of benefit to others, again, at this time, upon seeing that one is unable to effect the completion of the benefits of even a single person, to say nothing of all living creatures, and, at the time of searching, with the thought of whether there is one who is able, of whether, if there is, one can himself obtain such himself, - there is only a Buddha, who has without any exception, got rid of the faults of the two obscurations etc. and who has fully realized the virtuous qualities of wisdom, compassion, and power, etc; not only that, upon seeing that this is obtainable and ought to be obtained, at the time when there arises the effortless experiencing of an attitude which thinks "I must quickly obtain the condition of a Buddha for the sake of all living creatures.", one has obtained the honest to goodness mind to enlightenment and has entered at the beginning the path of the great vehicle. Now, this up through the above, makes merely roughly and in brief, the steps of the technique of developing the mind to enlightenment, (the technique) of the system of the seven cause and effect precepts. Since at this point, the steps of the technique of developing the mind to enlightenment by way of the sameness and exchange of oneself and the others, is a point of very great importance, it seems that there ought to be explained briefly some few (points) from the Bodhicaryāvatara of Santideva, the instructions of the different systems of mental training, and the small and great Lam rims etc., because of fear of too much (size), it will not be explained here, and if one wishes to know this, one may know from doing a good study of the above books or from the instruction of a geshe.

- I. Well, once the mind to enlightenment is developed, what is the way of training in the action?

G. Once the mind to enlightenment is produced, if one does not actually train in the actions of a son of the conqueror, there is no way of arriving at the Buddha level for the sake of others. For example, it is just as, even though one has produced the mind which is decided, "I shall go to the city.", if one does not actually commence the action of going, one cannot arrive there. Therefore, having the mind to enlightenment without actually performing the practice of (a bodhisattva's) deeds, is called the mind of wishing for enlightenment, whereas having the mind to enlightenment with the actual performance of deeds, is called the mind of entry to enlightenment. Generally speaking, although a Bodhisattva's deeds are without a measurement, if all of these are gathered together, they may be included principally in the practice of the six perfections. These so-called six perfections are the six practices motivated by the mind to enlightenment; the practices of charity, of lawful conduct, of manly effort, of meditative concentration, and of wisdom. Moreover, if one brings together their fruit, the Buddha body, it is included in two, the perfected non-corporeal body and the corporeal body. Likewise, the causes of these also are included in two, the accumulations of merits and of gnoses. The reason is, that, the causes of the attainment principally of the corporeal body are called the accumulation of merits, and the causes of the attainment of the perfected non-corporeal body are called the accumulation of gnoses. Therefore, the first five perfections, charity etc., make up the accumulation of merits, and the sixth perfection, wisdom, makes up the accumulation of gnoses, and it is necessary to practise the union of both accumulations.

To state merely briefly the way of training in these six perfections, charity etc.: -The first, charity, -the actual nature of charity is the attitude of wishing to give to others one's possessions etc., and since, if one distinguishes, it has three subdistinctions, the first, called the giving of material stuff, is, for example, (anything) from the small giving to another of a morsel of food up to the greater giving of one's life, along with the merits (acquired by the giving), and the second, the giving of the doctrine, is, say, with the thought of benefiting, to teach another the doctrine from a single sloka on up. The third, called 'the giving of the asylum of being free of fear', is saving a living creature from burning in fire, drowning in water, etc. or saving another from any fear or wretched condition (like) taking out a living creature from a prison

which he has happened into, etc. Moreover, as for the meaning of the perfection of giving, -other than signifying through recourse to training in an attitude of generosity, the giving to another of one's life, material stuff, roots of virtues of the three times, (etc.) out of compassion and the mind to enlightenment, (or) the perfection of the attitude which can give from the heart without any stinginess or parsimony etc., the meaning of the perfection of giving is not the abolishment of all poor in the world through the giving of things. The reason is, that, it is just as, even though there are many poor in the world, the former Buddhas did not perform the perfection of giving. Also, it is stated at length in the Bodhicaryāvatara, "If by abolishing poor creaturesetc."

Then, as the perfection of lawful conduct has also three, -the first, called the lawful conduct which restrains evil actions, is the observing accordingly without transgressing their prescribed limits, the lawful conduct which avoids the 10 non-virtues and the lawful conduct of the three vows (i.e.) of individual deliverance, of a Bodhisattva, and of the Mantrayana. The second, the lawful conduct which gathers together the virtuous qualities, is all the Bodhisattva's training in the virtuous qualities, the six perfections etc. which mature the mental continuum of oneself and others. The third, called the lawful conduct which performs benefits for living creatures, signifies the efforts to do the practice of maturing the mental continuum of others, (like) the four things which collect (disciples) and the eleven objectives of living creatures which are set forth in the Bodhisattva-bhūmi. etc. Among the three, this lawful conduct of restraint, is the foundation of the other two also, and since the nature of this lawful conduct is principally an attitude of avoiding injury to another, along with its basis, once one increases this attitude of avoiding, by which one's mind is turned away from injury to others and its causes, killing etc. by the force of compassion and the mind to enlightenment, when this (attitude) is fully achieved, the perfection of lawful conduct is fully achieved; however, the perfection of this is not the bringing of living creatures one by one externally to a place of no injury, and likewise, it (s perfection) is not dependent upon annihilating the miseries, of being killed etc., of every living creature; this can be known through drawing the conclusion from the manner in which the Buddhas of the past have perfected lawful conduct.

Now, lawful conduct having been made just briefly, -the way of practising the third, the perfection of patience: -by way of understanding the statements in the scriptures and commentaries on the unlimited benefits of patience and the evil effects of anger or hatred, its contrareity, like the statement in the Bodhicaryāvatara, "There is no evil like hatred, no austerity like patience.", one must meditate patience by many methods and with great application. Moreover, to state just a single part of the evil effects of anger, - for instance, it is taught that if we non-Bodhisattvas produce a single instant of anger toward a Bodhisattva, we destroy by that the roots of virtue accumulated over a thousand eons. As this patience also is taught to be three-fold, - the way of meditating the first, called the patience of not getting even with a doer of an injury: - is (meditating upon) the reasons why anger towards him is improper: for example, if one considers whether an enemy does the performance of an injury to oneself, having personal control, or whether, without any personal control, his mind is incited by karma and the passions, one will understand that he is enjoined to act by strong karma and passion, without his having any personal control at all, and when one understands this, anger towards him is very improper, -for instance - a man who is crazed by an evil spirit or a disease, wishes to do injury even to his helpers, his friends and relatives etc., and even though he strikes them with a weapon etc. the friends, relatives etc. then produce compassion, as anger is unsuitable, and must help him; just so, also, when another does an injury to oneself, upon reflecting that his nature is not such, and that other than being intoxicated by the passions of hatred etc., he is completely without personal control etc., it is necessary to meditate producing particularly patience and compassion. This and the others one ought to meditate upon, studying the wide variety of reasons as set forth in the Bodhicaryāvatara and the Lam rim etc.

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

VOCABULARY

व्यथानुभूतिः	worry, solicitude	मूर्खः	dull, weak, feeble
चिन्तयति	to think	उत्साहः	to discourage, to depress
आभासः	mirror-reflection, reflected image	शस्त्रम्	armor
शूलः	thorn	(मन्त्रानुष्ठानम्)	to distinguish
उत्सृज्यते	to avoid, to get away from	शून्यता	emptiness, void- ness, <u>sunyatā</u>
चर्मम्	leather, skin	द्वयम्	one of a pair
आच्छादयति	to cover up, to put on	आकाशम्	sky, space
आनन्दयति	to delight in, to take pleasure in	पक्षिः	wing
पस्यति	to like; to hold mentally	उड़ना	to fly
विक्रयः	selling, trade, barter	एकद्वयम्	without one of a pair
कृषिः	agriculture, field work	अध्यायः	P.N. of a sūtra
प्राप्नोति	to get, to take	अन्धः	one who leads a blind person
विलम्बयति	to put off, to postpone	अल्पः	a little
विलम्बः	to be late	अन्यः	other
अपमानयति	to depreciate, to downgrade	आश्चर्यम्	magical creation
		समस्तम्	simultaneously, suddenly, all at once
		वज्रयानम्	Vajrayāna

सक्ये

to take or require time

सक्ये

the precept of the tantric vow

वायु

airplane

EXPRESSIONS AND IDIOMS

स्वीकृत्य (स्वीकृत्य)

to accept or take voluntarily

अविद्या

understanding

अविद्या अविद्या अविद्या

empty or devoid of self, an existent nature

अविद्या

the sole of the foot

अविद्या

procrastination

अविद्या अविद्या

the Prajñāparamita sūtra

अविद्या

(H) father and son (i.e. master-disciple)

अविद्या

Svatāntrika (mādhymika)

अविद्या

prasāngika (mādhymika)

अविद्या

degenerate time

अविद्या

the scriptures and the doctrinal systems

अविद्या

to determine the extent (as of a river, cave, etc.), to fathom the depth

अविद्या

Title of a book

अविद्या अविद्या अविद्या

Title of a book

अविद्या अविद्या अविद्या

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
Title of a book

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
Title of a book

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
adornments of scholars

དུས་ཚུན་གསལ་བཤད་
at this time

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
the ten levels

ལུང་དགོངས་པ་
the pure land

འཛམ་གླིང་གསལ་བཤད་
akaniṣṭra ghaṇa vyūtha

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
the end of the continuation (of the ten levels)

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
the system of the sutra

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
short life

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
one possessing the qualities of . . .

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
benefits and dangers

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
entry to the union (i.e. of the two kayas)

མཚན་མཛུགས་དགོངས་པ་མཛུགས་གསལ་བཤད་
not completely without a place of mention

NOTES

1. ཚོང་དང་ཞིང་ལས་ "trade and agriculture" are covered by
 མི་དགོ་བའི་བྱ་བ་ non-virtuous action, whereas རྒྱ་དང་བྱོལ་
 མེད་ཀྱི་གཏམ་ "beer and talk about women" is covered by བྱ་བ་ངན་
 "bad action", as well.
2. རང་རྒྱུན་ ཐལ་འབྱུང་ "Svatantrika and Prasangika" are the two
 systems of explaining the meaning of the Madhyamika. The
 word, Svatantrika, "independent", refers to the independent
 syllogism used by the followers of the Svatantrika Madhyamika
 as a method of logical proof and understood by them based
 upon an inferential mark or reason inherently or intrinsically
 endowed with a certain nature. The word, Prasangika, "reductio
 ad absurdum" refers to the reductio ad absurdum argument
 favored by the followers of the Prasangika Madhyamika and
 viewed by them as a sufficient method of demonstrating their
 point. The actual point of issue between them is quite
 important and far reaching as what is at stake is the main-
 tenance of the determinacy of a right cognition in the face
 of the denial of any self-existent nature whatsoever. It
 might be added that both sides succeed in maintaining the
 determinacy of a right cognition; however, it is possible
 that the Svatantrikas accept more than is necessary in order
 to do it.
3. ཡན་པ་ = གཞན་པ་ .
4. རྒྱ་ལུགས་ "The system of the sutras". The two great systems
 of the Mahayana are usually seen as the Paramitayana and the

Vajrayana, often called མདོ་ལུགས་ , the system of the sutras, and རྒྱལ་ལུགས་ , the system of the tantras, respectively.

- 5. ལྷན་ལྷན་གྱི་བཀའ་ལུགས་ - "the ten levels of an Arya Bodhisattva." The ten stages (ལྷན་) are coextensive with the Mahayana paths of seeing and of meditation (མཐོང་ལམ་ and རྒྱལ་ལམ་) where in addition to effecting all the passion eliminations as described briefly in Lesson 18, the practitioner also accomplishes the six (and ten) perfections (སྐྱོང་ལྷན་) and the removal of the knowledge obscurations (ལྷན་གྱི་ལྷན་). The first of the ten stages is the Mahayana path of vision, and the remaining nine are the path of meditation and correspond to the nine levels of the Mahayana path of meditation.

and the way of the injuring are empty of a self-existent nature like reflections. This so-called fulfilling of the perfection of patience also is to perfect meditating the attitude which checks the inner enemy, the anger etc, in one's own mental continuum, but it does not depend upon actually overcoming one by one the unaltered living creatures etc, who are usura and possible donors of harm to oneself externally. The reason is, that, such a thing is impossible and if one controls one's own stable mind, it is like overcoming all these enemies. Here, for example, although one cannot cover with leather every region of the earth for the sake of averting the injury of thorns etc, to one's feet, it is extensively taught in the Bodhicaryavatara etc, that if one covers just the soles of one's feet with leather, it is like covering with leather the whole surface of the earth.

The fourth, called manly effort, signifies an attitude which delights in virtue, and again, it is necessary to practice according to the way in which the practicing of manly effort as the antidote of each of three lazinesses, (which are) the opposite sides of manly effort, is wisely taught. The first of the three lazinesses, called the laziness of addiction to bad acts, signifies not wishing to undertake virtuous action out of being addicted to and desirous of the nonvirtuous actions and the evil actions of the world,

TRANSLATION

The way of meditating the second, called the patience of willingly accepting misery, when one has a misery or injury, it is necessary to accept willingly these miseries and hurts and to produce courage by way of considering the way in which one is hurt, by increasing the misery of solicitude in addition to its being no cause of benefit if one is impatient and unhappy with these (and to produce courage etc.) by way of the unlimited reasons and benefits (of patience) such as stated in the Bodhicaryāvatara, "If a man to be killed has a hand cut off, why isn't it good? If by human miseries one is not in hell, why isn't it good?"

The third, the patience of ascertaining (the nature of) dharma, - this is to meditate the patience which in considering the effect of karma, the Three Jewels, the Truths, etc. is not terrified with these, and also, in particular, to cultivate a particular patience through considering how the doer of injury, the object of injury, and the way of the injuring are empty of a self-existent nature like reflections. This so-called fulfilling of the perfection of patience also is to perfect meditating the attitude which checks the inner enemy, the anger etc. in one's own mental continuum, but it does not depend upon actually overcoming one by one the unlimited living creatures etc. who are doers and possible doers of harm to oneself externally. The reason is, that, such a thing is impossible and if one controls one's own single mind, it is like overcoming all these enemies. Here, for example, - although one cannot cover with leather every region of the earth for the sake of averting the injury of thorns etc. to one's feet, it is extensively taught in the Bodhicaryāvatara etc. that if one covers just the soles of one's feet with leather, it is like covering with leather the whole surface of the earth.

The fourth, called manly effort, - signifies an attitude which delights in virtue, and again, it is necessary to practise according to the way in which the practising of manly effort as the antidote of each of three lazinesses, (which are) the opposite sides of manly effort, is widely taught. The first of the three lazinesses, called the laziness of addiction to bad acts, signifies not wishing to undertake virtuous action out of being addicted to and desirous of the nonvirtuous actions and the evil actions of the world,

selling and agriculture (etc.), and beer (-drinking) and talk about women etc. (respectively). This is a hinderance to undertaking virtuous action at the beginning. As the antidote to this, it is necessary to have recourse to the manly effort which takes pleasure in virtue through reflecting on the action of the round as without a core and as the cause of misery. The second, called the laziness of procrastination, is the laziness which makes gradually more distant while putting off to later with the thought of "tomorrow" or "the day after tomorrow", even though one wishes to undertake a virtuous action. As the antidote to this, it is necessary to meditate the manly effort which undertakes the virtuous immediately through meditating the impermanence of death and uncertainty as to the time of dying. The third, called the laziness of self-depreciation, is the laziness which depresses the spirit by way of downgrading oneself with the thought, for instance, "I am of a dull intellect and of small courage etc. since it is extremely difficult, how can someone like me practise the acts of a Bodhisattva and obtain Buddhahood?". As the antidote of this, as expressed in the Bodhicaryāvatara, "One like me who am born in the human race . . . etc.", it is necessary to arouse manly effort and to raise the spirits with the thought "How can I not obtain enlightenment?" once one considers one's virtuous qualities of having the power of mind to investigate the good and the evil etc. and to have obtained one's good body, a human body, such as the body obtained by the former Buddhas. Although there are likewise many ways of meditating (this effort) etc., the threefold subdivisions of the manly effort, (which is) the armor, etc., just this is made in brief. Then, since the method of practising the fifth, meditative trance, also the way of meditating (mental) stabilization, which (is) its nature, has already appeared roughly in the chapter on meditation among learning, reflection, and meditation, this suffices.

As for the way of practising the sixth, the perfection of wisdom, -generally speaking, the nature of wisdom signifies the cognition which discriminates existents, and here also, although there are many subdistinctions, mundane wisdom, transmundane wisdom etc., the principal of all of these is the practise of the perfection of wisdom which cognises emptiness, the actual condition of the individuality and of existents. The reason is, that, even though one meditates the techniques of the mind to enlightenment etc., if there is no wisdom which cognises emptiness, the actual condition (of things), it is impossible to cut off the root

of the round of existences; and just as a bird with a single wing is unable to fly in the sky, technique without wisdom cannot go to the level of a Buddha; therefore, it is necessary to practise technique coupled with wisdom. Likewise, it is said in the Mahāyāna saṅgraha, "If there is no wisdom the five perfections are blind; because they are without a leader they cannot reach enlightenment."; even though the first five perfections are like a blind man with feet; and even though wisdom is present, if the first five perfections are not present, it is like a cripple with eyes; and since it is taught that it is impossible to reach enlightenment by only whichever (one) of the two, it is necessary to perfect the practice of the six perfections in union. Therefore, it is taught that a Bodhissatva, a son of the conquerer, practises through comprehending all six in each perfection, giving etc., individually. Here for instance, there is a giving of giving up to a wisdom of giving, and similarly, the scheme is carried out for the others also. Now, the production of the wisdom which cognizes without error (as the actual condition) of things, such an actual condition (as) emptiness, -since it is difficult, at first, it is not possible to produce it by one's own power, and it is necessary to follow one who teaches this without error. Moreover, the Arya Nagarjuna, of whom the Buddha actually prophecied that he would explain without error the actual condition of things, composed the six works of the Madhyamika etc., which explain by way of various reasons and (citations from) scriptures, the thought of the Prajnaparamita sutras. There are quite a few different ways of explanation and acceptance of his thought; explanation of the thought of the madhyamika as a Prasangika system (as) by Buddhapalita, Candrakirti, etc.; explanation of the meaning of the Madhyamika as a Svatantrika system (as) by his disciples, Bhavaviveka, Santaraksita, (the) master and (his) disciple (Kamalasila). Nonetheless, the great Tsong kha pa, the scholar-adept of this degenerate time, having by learning, reflection, and meditation fathomed the depth of the systems of each of the above masters, developed finally the view which comprehends without error the real condition (of things), he composed Rtza shes rnam bshad chen mo, Dbus ma la 'jug pa'i 'grel pa, Drang ba dang nges pa'i don rnam par 'byed pa'i legs bshad snying po, etc., the essence of his teaching which is based upon that view. At the end of that (last) from "Those who are the ornaments among the scholars of Jambudvīpa . . ." to "Who would not hold the good system of Nagarjuna as the chief?", since he views as immaculate and the final view the system of the Prasangika by which Buddhapalita, Candrakirti, etc. explain the meaning of his system, the thought of Nagarjuna, he says, that one must have recourse to this. Therefore, although I wish through recourse to this to explain a little the way of resolving uncertainty about emptiness, the profound real condition (of things), since this is deep and

subtle, it is not easy (to explain) by very little; on the other hand, because it would become too much here, since except for another time it could not be finished now, I put it aside temporarily. From this, through the above, I pretend to have explained in brief from the development of the mind to enlightenment through the practice of the six perfections. Then, just briefly, the way of obtaining the condition of a Buddha, the result:- as in the system of the sutras in order to be enlightened, it is necessary to amass the accumulations (of merits and gnoses) for three 'non count eons', by way of practising the six perfections such as the above, one amasses the accumulations of the first 'non count eon' during the period of both the so-called path of accumulation and the path of reaching, the paths of a Bodhisattva who is an ordinary individual; inasmuch as, the levels of a Bodhisattva, who is an Arya, are ten, one amasses the accumulations of the second 'non count eon' during the first seven levels; once one has amassed the accumulations of the third 'non count eon' during the last three (levels), finally in the pure land called Akanistra ghana vyuha the Bodhisattva, who is abiding on the final (moment) of the continuum of the tenth level, obtains the non-corporeal body, the gnosis which perfects the understanding and riddances, and the body of perfect requisites, the corporeal body which is adorned with the thirty two auspicious marks and the eighty minor marks; then at the same time, the many magically created bodies which are in other fields and regions are enlightened as the magical creation body, by way of which, one comes to obtain simultaneously the three bodies. From then on, as long as the round of existences is not empty, one accomplishes spontaneously without effort continuously, the objectives of living creatures by way of unlimited deeds of body, speech and mind; such briefly is the way of obtaining Buddhahood from the point of view of the system of the sutras.

Nonetheless, while the teaching of the Mantrayana of the great vehicle exists, it is certainly of great importance to be able to enter into the path of the Vajrayana, the highest and unsurpassable technique of quickly obtaining Buddhahood, after practising the shared paths of renunciation, the wisdom which comprehends emptiness, the real condition (of things), and the mind to enlightenment, etc., paths which are indispensable to both the sutras and the tantras. The reason is that having recourse to this path is a special method for being able to become a Buddha even in one short lifetime of this degenerate age, without it being necessary to require the time of many eons. Also, the practice of the shared path comes beforehand; then one ripens oneself through taking initiation from one who has the character of a master of the Mantrayana. It is necessary to keep the different vows and special precepts taken at the time of initiation. Those for whom training in the shared path has not come beforehand, or even it has come beforehand, who have

not obtained the pure power which deposits definitely the seed of the four bodies, or even they have obtained this, but do not preserve accordingly the vow and special precepts of the tantra, these push far away the special, profound, and extremely rapid qualities of the tantra which are not shared, (i.e. by the sutras). It is said in the tantras that there are greater dangers, coming to experience the miseries of those gone to the evil destinies for many eons, etc. If for an example of both the greater benefits and danger, one takes flying in the modern airplane, it is appropriate. Therefore, when by way of abiding accordingly with the vow and special precepts such as these, one practises successively both the yoga of developing stage and of the perfecting stage, one will obtain rapidly the position of a Buddha, the union (of the two bodies); such at least so as not to be empty of an outline is mentioned about the tantra.

बुद्धिः शक्तिः	Intellect	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	P.N. of a sect	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	Sumara	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	all, every	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	"the arising of all", i.e. the cause of samsara, the 2nd of the 4 noble truths	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	phenomenal, conventional, phenomenally true or real	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	to activate	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	motivation	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	leather, skin	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	P.N. of a person	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	one of the	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	to have	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	crossed	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	Mayajana	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	P.N. of a person	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	to read	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	axle	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	in the middle of (comp. with gen.)	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	difficult	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power
बुद्धिः शक्तिः	difficulties, pains, problems	बुद्धिः शक्तिः	intellect, power

GLOSSARY

ग

ग.स.स.पु.स.	Kamalasila	• ग.स.स.पु.स.	ascetic practice, austerity
ग.स.स.पु.स.	P.N. of a sect	• ग.स.स.पु.स.	how difficult?
गु.स.स.	Kumara	• गु.स.स.	white
गु.स.	all, every	• ग.स.स.पु.स.	Three Jewels, Triratna
गु.स.स.पु.स.	"the arising of all", i.e. the cause of misery, the 2nd of the 4 noble truths	• ग.स.स.पु.स.	rare
गु.स.स.पु.स.	phenomenal, conventional, phenomenally true or real	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	to stir up, to incite
गु.स.स.पु.स.	to motivate	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	irritation, inflammation (i.e. between two persons)
गु.स.स.पु.स.	motivation	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	p. of गु.स.स.पु.स.
ग.स.	leather, skin	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	p. of गु.स.स.पु.स.
ग.स.स.पु.स.	P.N. of a person	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	speech, utterance; Buddhist scripture (Hon.)
ग.स.स.पु.स.	one of the . . .	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	expressed wishes, order (H)
ग.स.स.पु.स.	<u>hahava</u>	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	secret instructions
ग.स.स.पु.स.	crooked	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	P.N. of a sect
ग.स.स.पु.स.	Nagarjuna	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	P.N. of a sect
ग.स.स.पु.स.	P.N. of a person	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	to ask, to inquire (Hon.)
ग.स.स.पु.स.	to read	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	kindness, favor, service
ग.स.स.पु.स.	<u>mandala</u>	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	"precept transmissions" (see note Lesson 7)
ग.स.स.पु.स.	in the middle of (prep. with gen.)	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	one of highest classes in the monastic educational system
ग.स.स.पु.स.	difficult	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	p. of गु.स.स.पु.स.
ग.स.स.पु.स.	difficulties, pains, problems	• गु.स.स.पु.स.	homage, service
		• गु.स.स.पु.स.	p. of गु.स.स.पु.स.

वसुधा कन्दन.	radiance, brilliance. (i.e. of complexion).	वसुधा कन्दन.	very famous
वसुधा.	fut. of वसुधा.	वसुधा.	instant; moment
वसुधा.	p. of वसुधा.	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	in every single instant
वसुधा.	p. of वसुधा.	वसुधा.	momentariness
वसुधा.	fut. of वसुधा.	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	in every instant
वसुधा.	p. of वसुधा.	वसुधा.	loud noise, noisiness
वसुधा.	basically, primarily.	वसुधा.	conversation, speech
वसुधा.	the sole of the foot	वसुधा वसुधा.	to tell, to report, to talk
वसुधा.	foot, leg	वसुधा वसुधा.	to call; to invite
वसुधा वसुधा.	stick by stick, piece by piece (if the pieces are of a long, thin stick shape)	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	language, letter
वसुधा वसुधा.	limbs, hands and feet	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	to institute new language (as for translation etc.)
वसुधा.	palate	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	time, occasion; chapter
वसुधा.	to steal	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	at the time of, during
वसुधा वसुधा.	thief, robber	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	"the three occasions", name of a class of gods of the desire region
वसुधा वसुधा.	stealth, stealing; robber	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	dry
वसुधा वसुधा.	just, only	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	fortunate one (see note Lesson 7)
वसुधा वसुधा.	cause, condition	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	share, portion, allotment
वसुधा वसुधा.	to cause	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	body (Hon.)
वसुधा वसुधा.	to extend, to stretch out	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	relative (excluding parents) (Hon.)
वसुधा वसुधा.	stupid, dull; mute	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	image, icon (Hon.)
वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	P.N. of a person	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	thankha (Hon.)
वसुधा वसुधा.	voice, speech; language	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	time (i.e. of a person) (H)
वसुधा वसुधा.	famous	वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	from (i.e. of a person) (H)
		वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	likeness, image (Hon.)
		वसुधा वसुधा वसुधा.	string of lives (Hon.)

ॐ. ॐ.	representative, representation of (Hon.)	ॐ. ॐ.	person, individual, creature
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to represent (Hon.)	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	<u>Jataka</u>
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	body, speech and mind (Hon.)	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	birthplace
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	the three bodies	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to be depressed
ॐ. ॐ.	to send	ॐ. ॐ.	poor
ॐ. ॐ.	to encourage; to goad, to spur on	ॐ. ॐ.	to lengthen
ॐ. ॐ.	to appoint; to nominate	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	defect, fault; objection, criticism
ॐ. ॐ.	to thirst	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to express criticism of
ॐ. ॐ.	to go around; to make the rounds of; to turn around	ॐ. ॐ.	at the time of putting, etc. (see Lesson 1, note 6) (Hon.)
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	concerning, on, about	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to protect from, to save from
ॐ. ॐ.	refuge	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	lead reciter
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to go to for refuge, to take refuge in	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	hair (i.e. of head)
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	society, membership; wealth, wealth and poverty	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	strand of hair
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	comfort, ease	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to be afraid
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to be born, to originate	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	fut. of ॐ.
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	birth, production	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	p. of ॐ.
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to produce, to bring into being	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	fut. of ॐ.
ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to take to, to conduct to	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	p. of ॐ.
ॐ. ॐ.	p. of ॐ.	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	an eon, a <u>kalpa</u>
ॐ. ॐ.	man (in contra-distinction to woman)	ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	fut. and p. of ॐ.
		ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	fut. and p. of ॐ.
		ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	to help by urging on
		ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	an exhortation
		ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	fut. of ॐ.
		ॐ. ॐ. ॐ. ॐ.	fut. and p. of ॐ.

अ. अ. २.	p. of अ.	• अ. अ. २.	fut. and p. of अ.
अ. अ.	fut. of अ.	• अ. अ.	fut. and p. of अ.
अ. अ. २. ३. ४.	please do (Hon.)	• अ. अ. २. ३. ४.	the developing and perfecting stages
अ. अ. २.	p. of अ.	• अ. अ. २.	the developing stage
अ. अ.	fut. of अ.	• अ. अ. २.	title of a book
अ. अ. २.	p. of अ.	• अ. अ. २. ३. ४. ५. ६. ७.	one who practices the developing stages
अ. अ. (अ. अ.)	again	• अ. अ. २.	
अ. अ. अ.	review, practice again	•	

ब.

ब. अ.	v. to complete the number n. an addition	• ब. अ. अ.	the higher realms or regions (i.e. the form region and formless region of the Buddhist cosmos)
ब. अ. अ. अ.	quiet	• ब. अ. अ. अ.	the three regions (of the Buddhist cosmos)
ब. अ. अ.	color	• (verb +) ब. अ.	just before. . .
ब. अ. अ.	recitation	• ब. अ. अ.	straight
ब. अ. अ. अ. अ.	to recite	• ब. अ.	a loose bulk measure of @ 30 lbs.
ब. अ. अ.	food	• ब. अ. अ. अ.	acceptance, admission
ब. अ. अ.	few	• ब. अ. अ. अ. अ. अ. अ. अ.	P.N. of a person
ब. अ. अ. अ. अ.	clear (refers only to discourse)	• ब. अ.	burden, responsibility
ब. अ. अ.	part, division	• ब. अ. अ. अ.	p. of अ.
ब. अ. अ.	house	• ब. अ. अ. अ.	to bear the burden, to carry the responsibility
ब. अ. अ. अ.	regional division within a monastic college (see Lesson 1, note 3)	• ब. अ.	area
ब. अ. अ.	region; sphere; element; disposition	• ब. अ. अ. अ.	to pretend

२३०२	v. to take one turn . (i.e. turn comes around); to revolve, circuit, cycle n. court, retinue, following	२३०२ २३०३ २३०४ २३०५ २३०६ २३०७ २३०८	to carry, to bear to carry; to arrive, to reach n. instruction, explanation v. fut. of २३०४ lead teacher war; conflict to wash to be born (Hon.) birthplace (Hon.)
२३०३	wheel	२३०९	
२३०४	Cakravartin	२३१०	
२३०५	samsara, the round of existence(s)	२३११	
२३०६	to be boiled	२३१२	
२३०७	short time	२३१३	

ग.

ग. १.	which	१. ग. १. १. २.	here, there and everywhere
ग. २.	when	१. ग. २.	whatsoever
ग. ३.	how, what	१. ग. ३.	however, whatever
ग. ४.	how can it be right?	१. ग. ४. १. २. ३. ४.	whichever way is convenient
ग. ५.	where	१. ग. ५.	how
ग. ६.	how many, how much	१. ग. ६. १. २.	what kind of (person or thing)
ग. ७.	Gayadhara (P.N.)	१. १. १. २. ३. ४. ५. ६. ७. ८. ९. १०. ११. १२. १३. १४. १५. १६. १७. १८. १९. २०. २१. २२. २३. २४. २५. २६. २७. २८. २९. ३०. ३१. ३२. ३३. ३४. ३५. ३६. ३७. ३८. ३९. ४०. ४१. ४२. ४३. ४४. ४५. ४६. ४७. ४८. ४९. ५०. ५१. ५२. ५३. ५४. ५५. ५६. ५७. ५८. ५९. ६०. ६१. ६२. ६३. ६४. ६५. ६६. ६७. ६८. ६९. ७०. ७१. ७२. ७३. ७४. ७५. ७६. ७७. ७८. ७९. ८०. ८१. ८२. ८३. ८४. ८५. ८६. ८७. ८८. ८९. ९०. ९१. ९२. ९३. ९४. ९५. ९६. ९७. ९८. ९९. १००.	whatever one makes . . .
ग. ८.	what	१. ग. ८. १. २. ३. ४. ५. ६. ७. ८. ९. १०. ११. १२. १३. १४. १५. १६. १७. १८. १९. २०. २१. २२. २३. २४. २५. २६. २७. २८. २९. ३०. ३१. ३२. ३३. ३४. ३५. ३६. ३७. ३८. ३९. ४०. ४१. ४२. ४३. ४४. ४५. ४६. ४७. ४८. ४९. ५०. ५१. ५२. ५३. ५४. ५५. ५६. ५७. ५८. ५९. ६०. ६१. ६२. ६३. ६४. ६५. ६६. ६७. ६८. ६९. ७०. ७१. ७२. ७३. ७४. ७५. ७६. ७७. ७८. ७९. ८०. ८१. ८२. ८३. ८४. ८५. ८६. ८७. ८८. ८९. ९०. ९१. ९२. ९३. ९४. ९५. ९६. ९७. ९८. ९९. १००.	how
ग. ९.	the reason is that . . .	१. ग. ९. १. २. ३. ४. ५. ६. ७. ८. ९. १०. ११. १२. १३. १४. १५. १६. १७. १८. १९. २०. २१. २२. २३. २४. २५. २६. २७. २८. २९. ३०. ३१. ३२. ३३. ३४. ३५. ३६. ३७. ३८. ३९. ४०. ४१. ४२. ४३. ४४. ४५. ४६. ४७. ४८. ४९. ५०. ५१. ५२. ५३. ५४. ५५. ५६. ५७. ५८. ५९. ६०. ६१. ६२. ६३. ६४. ६५. ६६. ६७. ६८. ६९. ७०. ७१. ७२. ७३. ७४. ७५. ७६. ७७. ७८. ७९. ८०. ८१. ८२. ८३. ८४. ८५. ८६. ८७. ८८. ८९. ९०. ९१. ९२. ९३. ९४. ९५. ९६. ९७. ९८. ९९. १००.	whatever one wishes
ग. १०.	whatever it is, whatever it may be	१. ग. १०. १. २. ३. ४. ५. ६. ७. ८. ९. १०. ११. १२. १३. १४. १५. १६. १७. १८. १९. २०. २१. २२. २३. २४. २५. २६. २७. २८. २९. ३०. ३१. ३२. ३३. ३४. ३५. ३६. ३७. ३८. ३९. ४०. ४१. ४२. ४३. ४४. ४५. ४६. ४७. ४८. ४९. ५०. ५१. ५२. ५३. ५४. ५५. ५६. ५७. ५८. ५९. ६०. ६१. ६२. ६३. ६४. ६५. ६६. ६७. ६८. ६९. ७०. ७१. ७२. ७३. ७४. ७५. ७६. ७७. ७८. ७९. ८०. ८१. ८२. ८३. ८४. ८५. ८६. ८७. ८८. ८९. ९०. ९१. ९२. ९३. ९४. ९५. ९६. ९७. ९८. ९९. १००.	haphazardly
ग. ११.	slowly	१. ग. ११. १. २. ३. ४. ५. ६. ७. ८. ९. १०. ११. १२. १३. १४. १५. १६. १७. १८. १९. २०. २१. २२. २३. २४. २५. २६. २७. २८. २९. ३०. ३१. ३२. ३३. ३४. ३५. ३६. ३७. ३८. ३९. ४०. ४१. ४२. ४३. ४४. ४५. ४६. ४७. ४८. ४९. ५०. ५१. ५२. ५३. ५४. ५५. ५६. ५७. ५८. ५९. ६०. ६१. ६२. ६३. ६४. ६५. ६६. ६७. ६८. ६९. ७०. ७१. ७२. ७३. ७४. ७५. ७६. ७७. ७८. ७९. ८०. ८१. ८२. ८३. ८४. ८५. ८६. ८७. ८८. ८९. ९०. ९१. ९२. ९३. ९४. ९५. ९६. ९७. ९८. ९९. १००.	without measure; extreme
ग. १२.	from all over, from everywhere	१. ग. १२. १. २. ३. ४. ५. ६. ७. ८. ९. १०. ११. १२. १३. १४. १५. १६. १७. १८. १९. २०. २१. २२. २३. २४. २५. २६. २७. २८. २९. ३०. ३१. ३२. ३३. ३४. ३५. ३६. ३७. ३८. ३९. ४०. ४१. ४२. ४३. ४४. ४५. ४६. ४७. ४८. ४९. ५०. ५१. ५२. ५३. ५४. ५५. ५६. ५७. ५८. ५९. ६०. ६१. ६२. ६३. ६४. ६५. ६६. ६७. ६८. ६९. ७०. ७१. ७२. ७३. ७४. ७५. ७६. ७७. ७८. ७९. ८०. ८१. ८२. ८३. ८४. ८५. ८६. ८७. ८८. ८९. ९०. ९१. ९२. ९३. ९४. ९५. ९६. ९७. ९८. ९९. १००.	quite many, quite long, quite much

གང་ཟུག་	person	གོ་བ་ཚུགས་	to have understanding of
གང་ཡང་	any	གོ་རྒྱུ་	sequence, order
གང་ཡོད་	whatever you have, whatever is possible to you	གོ་ས་	position, rank
གང་རྣམས་ལ་ཡོད་	what one happens to have	གོང་	before (prep. with gen.) above
གང་ལྟར་གསལ་	fairly well	གོང་མ་	higher, former
གང་ལྟར་གསལ་	to do as well as one can	གོང་འཕེལ་	to rise higher, to be elevated, to progress
གད་མོ་	laugh, laughter	གོང་འཕེལ་དུ་	to make progress, to make to progress
གན་ཡོག་	P.N. of a place	གོ་ལ་པ་ལུག་	to stop; to walk
གཡ་ཚེ་བ་	of greater importance	གོ་མས་པ་	to be accustomed to; to be acclimatized to
གཡ་ཚེ་ལྡན་པ་	of great importance	གོས་	clothes
གཡ་ལྟེན་	if	གོས་ལྲག་པ་	P.N. of person
ལྟག་	bent	(འགོས་) ལྟེན་བཅོས་	
ལྟེན་པ་	respect	གོས་ཡོག་	clothes, garment
ལྟེན་པ་གཞུག་	respect and service, homage	ལྟར་	to be at (other than one's ordinary place)
གཤམ་	obstacle, hinderance, impediment	ལྟེན་	do!
གོ་	to understand, to comprehend, to know about	ལྟོན་	to wear
གོ་ཚེ་	armor	ལྟོན་	preparation
གོ་དོན་	meaning; the meaning to be under- stood	ལྟོན་ལྟོན་	monk's clothes
གོ་དོན་གསལ་	to reverse (positions)	ལྟོན་པ་	monk
གོ་གནས་	position, rank	ལྟོན་པ་གཞུག་	to become a monk (Hon.)
གོ་འཕེལ་	position, station	ལྟོན་པ་ལྟེན་	to become a monk
		ལྟོན་ཚོང་	monastic college (see Lesson 1, note 3)
		ལྟོན་པ་	monastic center (see Lesson 1, note 2)
		ལྟོན་པ་ལྟེན་གྱི་ལྟོན་	to enroll at the monastic center

ལྷན་པ་ཚེ་བ་	more famous, better known	ལྷན་པ་ཚེ་བ་	belly, stomach
ལྷན་པ་པ་	fame	ལྷན་པ་	to be free, to be released
ལྷན་པ་མེད་	cold	ལྷན་པ་མེད་	emancipation, deliverance, freedom
ལྷན་པ་	count, reckoning, number	ལྷན་པ་དེར་མ་	P.N. of a person
ལྷན་པ་ག་	numeration, enumeration	ལྷན་པ་པོ་ཚེ་	elephant
ལྷན་པ་མེད་པ་	incalculatable	ལྷན་པ་	continent
ལྷན་པ་ཚེ་དེ་	number count, numerical measurement, numerical limit	ལྷན་པ་གསེ་བ་	one of the four grades of geshe; same as
ལྷན་པ་ལྟ་འགྲུབ་	to come into the reckoning of	ལྷན་པ་	p. of ལྷན་པ་
ལྷན་པ་ལྟ་འཇུག་	to be counted as, to be one of the...	ལྷན་པ་མཚན་	book
ལྷན་པ་	preparation	ལྷན་པ་པོ་	foolish, stupid
ལྷན་པ་	line, row	ལྷན་པ་	lung
ལྷན་པ་	knife	ལྷན་པ་	fut. of ལྷན་པ་
ལྷན་པ་པོ་	p. of ལྷན་པ་	ལྷན་པ་མཚན་ལྟར་	refutation (of the position of others), establishment (of one's own position), and response (to criticism of one's own position)
ལྷན་པ་མཚན་	shadow	ལྷན་པ་ལྟར་	P.N. of a monastery; Tusita Heaven
ལྷན་པ་པོ་	p. of ལྷན་པ་	ལྷན་པ་ལྟར་ལྟེན་པོ་	occupier of the throne at Dga' ldan (see Lesson 3 note)
ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་	tenet	ལྷན་པ་ལྟར་ཚེ་སྐྱོད་	P.N. of a monastery
ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་	accomplishment	ལྷན་པ་ལྟར་	to like, to be pleased, to please
ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་ལྟར་ལྟེན་པོ་	Siddha, adept	ལྷན་པ་ལྟར་ལྟེན་པོ་	enjoyment, pleasure
ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་(ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་)	friend	ལྷན་པ་	nine
ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་	friend (male)	ལྷན་པ་	fut. of ལྷན་པ་
ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་	friend (female)	ལྷན་པ་	age (Hon.)
ལྷན་པ་ལྟེན་པོ་	city	ལྷན་པ་	winter
ལྷན་པ་	to die	ལྷན་པ་	

དགུན་ཚེས་	winter session	དགོས་པ་	purpose, aim
དགོ་མཁན་	teacher	དགོས་མེད་དུ་	without purpose; without need
དགོ་བརྟེན་	<u>upasaka</u>	དགྱ་	enemy
དགོ་འདུན་	<u>sangha</u> , assembly of monks	དགྱ་བཅོམ་པ་	<u>arhant</u> , "enemy slayer"
དགོ་འདུན་གྱི་ཕ་	P.N. of a person	དགྱོད་	fut. of འགྱོད་ས་
དགོ་འདུན་པ་	a member of the <u>sangha</u> , a <u>bikhsu</u>	ཐགྱོད་	to go
དགོ་པ་	virtus	མ་གོ་	head
དགོ་བའི་བསྐྱེས་གཟེན་	<u>kalyanamitra</u> , "the good friend" of the <u>Prajnaparamita sutras</u> , geshe	མ་གོ་འཁོར་	the head is spinning, going around in circles; to be rapt or completely caught up in
དགོ་ཚུལ་	sramana	མ་གོ་གཞུག་	suppress, to push down the head of
དགོ་ལུགས་	P.N. of a sect	མ་གོ་འཇིག་	a head's weight
དགོ་བསྐྱེས་	geshe, an academic title, (see དགོ་བའི་བསྐྱེས་གཟེན་)	འགན་	responsibility
དགོ་ལྟོད་	<u>bikhsu</u> (see Lesson 1, note 9)	འགན་ལེགས་	some
དགོངས་འཁྲུལ་	consent, permission	འགན་ལ་	several, some
དགོངས་འགྲེལ་	commentary	འགན་པ་	to contravene; to contradict; to oppose
དགོངས་པ་	to think (Hon.) thought; actual thought (Hon.)	འགན་ལ་ལྱེན་	inamicable condition, hostile
དགོངས་པ་གནང་	to give permission (Hon.)	འགྱུ་བཅའ་ས་	to bend, to force
དགོངས་པ་འཕེལ་གསལ་	P.N. of a person	འགོ་	beginning, front
དགོད་	fut. of འགོད་	འགོ་འདྲི་བཅའ་ས་	to begin
དགོན་པ་	monastery	འགོ་བཟུང་	to stop, to cease
དགོས་	to be necessary, to have to, to need to	འགོག་པའི་བདེན་པ་	the truth of cessation
དགོས་ལྡན་	need, necessity	འགོག་པའམ་	cessation and path
		འགོད་	to arrange, to order, to formulate
		འགོར་	to take or require time
		འགྱུངས་	to delay, to be late

२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	to be changed, to be turned	२५५२. ३३३.	to plan to go
२५५२.	to be changed, to be transformed, to become, to turn into	२५५२. ३३३.	coming and going; traffic
२५५२. ३३३.	competition	२५५२. ३३३.	place to go to, destination
२५५२. ३३३. (३३३. ५.)	(in)comparable	२५५२. ३३३.	expencc, cost
२५५२. ३३३.	at	२५५२. ३३३.	to kill (Hon.)
२५५२.	to be right, to be suitable, to be proper	३३३.	to age (i.e. as of a living creature, not a thing)
२५५२.	to be diminished	३३३. ५.	older, elder
२५५२.	to be accomplished, to be finished; to exist, to be existant (i.e. demonstrably by logical proof)	३३३. ५.	p. of ३३३.
२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	effective action	३३३. ५.	excitement, stimulation; frivolity; wildness
२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	title of a book	३३३. ५.	India
२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	commentary	३३३. ५. ३३३.	an Indian
२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	subcommentary	३३३. ३३३.	size, stature
२५५२.	to go	३३३. ३३३.	wide
२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	to walk	३३३. ३३३.	widely, extensive
२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	arrangement, order, sequence	३३३. ३३३. ३३३.	extensive, wide, vast
२५५२. ३३३.	benefit to living creature; purpose of going	३३३. ३३३.	China
२५५२. ३३३.	creature, being	३३३. ३३३.	India and Tibet
२५५२. ३३३. ३३३.	the six kinds of beings (i.e. men, gods, <u>asuras</u> , hell-denzens, animals, and <u>preta</u>)	३३३. ३३३. ३३३. ३३३. ३३३. ३३३.	P.N. of a person
		३३३.	to put, to shoot, to hit
		३३३.	distance
		३३३.	behind
		३३३. ३३३.	king
		३३३. ३३३.	kingdom, principality
		३३३. ३३३. ३३३. ३३३.	P.N. of a person
		३३३. ३३३.	epithet of a person, regent
		३३३. ३३३. ३३३.	royal lineage

कुच'य'	kingdom	• कुच'य'कुच'य'	incite, arouse
कुच'युय'	son of the conquerors; prince	• कुच'युय'	the Upper Tantra College
कुच'युय'	kingship, monarchy	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	to put into practice in one's mental continuum
कुच'य'	to be extended	• कुच'य'	a person in one of the two tantra colleges
कुच'	cause, reason; property	• कुच'य'कुच'य'कुच'य'	monitor of the tantra college
	to move, to be moved	• कुच'य'कुच'य'कुच'य'	tantra session
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	the result which is in conformity with the cause	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	the system of the tantra
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	causes and conditions	• कुच'युय'	the Lower Tantra College
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	riches	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	the Lower Tantra College
कुच'य'	motion	• कुच'य'	continuation; continuum
कुच'युय'	cause and effect, causality	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	the end of the continuation
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	seven cause and effect precepts	• कुच'युय'	to continue
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	the reason	• कुच'युय'	usually, generally; continuously
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	on account of	• कुच'युय'	generally; usually; continuously
कुच'युय'	examination	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	without interruption, uninterruptedly
	to run	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	a varying length of time
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	to take an examination	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	for a long time
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	to take an examination (Hon.)	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	how long a duration?
कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	to give an examination	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	everything, all
कुच'	tantra; mental continuum, person	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	backbone
कुच'युय'	"tantra sound" (a deep resonant vocal production)	• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	door, gate
		• कुच'युय'	egg
		• कुच'युय'	by way of; via
		• कुच'युय'कुच'युय'	the three doors (i.e. of body, speech and mind)

ལྷན་པ་	P.N. of a monastic college	ལྷན་པ་	obscurations
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་	egg-born	ལྷན་པ་	to achieve, to effect; to practice; to prove
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	to meditate	ལྷན་པ་འདྲིམ་པ་	to hypostatize, to superimpose
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ཁང་	meditation hut	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ལྷན་	chain, fetters
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ཀྱི་ལྷན་པ་	kind of meditation	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ལྱེད་	lamp
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ལྱེད་	to do meditation	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	to set free; to transport
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ལྱེད་	hermit	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	Tara
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ལྱེད་པ་	a great yogin	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	manner, way
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་ལྱེད་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	to be a great yogin	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་ལྱེད་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	many hundreds and thousands
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	riddance or riddances by meditation; meditation riddance	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	150
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	the path of med- itating or of meditation	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	112
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	<u>Bhavanakrana</u>	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	century, a hundred
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	procrastination	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	Indra
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	magical illusion	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	eight
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	illusory body	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	eighty
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	to change; to translate	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	eighty-nine
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	sack, bag	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	fut. of ལྷན་པ་
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	sound, word; grammar	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	p. of ལྷན་པ་
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	literally	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	lineage
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	regimen; rules	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	indirectly
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	to enroll, to enter the regimen of	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	to be transmitted from one to another
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	to obscure	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	fut. of ལྷན་པ་
ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	the two obscurations.	ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	p. of ལྷན་པ་
		ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	p. of ལྷན་པ་
		ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	retranslation
		ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	p. of ལྷན་པ་
		ལྷན་པ་ལྱེད་པ་	fut. of ལྷན་པ་

अ
अ
अ

p. of अ
fut. of अ

अ

p. of अ

८

अहंकार	conceit, egotism	अहंकार	to ascertain, to know
अहंकार	we	अहंकार	renunciation
अहंकार	Mandhata	अहंकार	the highest good; <u>summum bonum</u>
अहंकार	voice, speech	अहंकार	ascertainment
अहंकार	a mute	अहंकार	understanding
अहंकार	nonsensical speech	अहंकार	nature, character
अहंकार	while . . . is present, in the presence of . . . , during . . .	अहंकार	actual; real
अहंकार	to remain continuously in . . . , to remain through-out . . .	अहंकार	to be acquainted with
अहंकार	to remain continuously in . . . , to remain through-out . . .	अहंकार	satisfaction
अहंकार	to remain continuously in . . . , to remain through-out . . .	अहंकार	P.N. of a person, epithet
अहंकार	bad, wicked, evil	अहंकार	to place together
अहंकार	those who go to an evil destiny or transmigration; an evil destiny or transmigration	अहंकार	to identify; to recognise
अहंकार	those who have gone to an evil destiny or transmigration; an evil destiny or transmigration	अहंकार	silver; money
अहंकार	those who have gone to an evil destiny or transmigration; an evil destiny or transmigration	अहंकार	actual, real
अहंकार	those who have gone to an evil destiny or transmigration; an evil destiny or transmigration	अहंकार	in fact, actually
अहंकार	those who have gone to an evil destiny or transmigration; an evil destiny or transmigration	अहंकार	honest to goodness
अहंकार	as I heard	अहंकार	article, thing; an actual existent (see note Lesson 5)
अहंकार	Raurava	अहंकार	the actual, actuality
अहंकार	Maharaurava	अहंकार	explicitly; directly; truly

མངག་	to commission, to delegate	མངོན་ལྟར་དུ་	directly perceived, as before one's eyes
མངགས་	p. of མངག་	མངོན་གསལ་	obvious
མངའ་བའམ་	lord, master; landlord	མི་གསལ་ལེགས་པོ་	P.N. of a person
མངའ་ཤིང་	P.N. of a place	ལྔ་	five
མངལ་	womb, uterus	ལྔ་ལྔ་	five hundred
མངལ་སྐྱེས་	womb-born	ལྔ་ལྔ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	5500
མངོན་མཁུམ་	supernormal knowledge	ལྔ་པོ་	early, former
མངོན་འགྱུར་	the actualized, the present actually (in contradistinction to potentially)	ལྔ་དུ་	earlier propagation or spread
མངོན་ཚུགས་	<u>Abhisamahalankara</u>	ལྔ་ལྔ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	former-later, past-future
མངོན་མཁུམ་	a high condition (in the world)	ལྔ་ལྔ་	each former
མངོན་ལྟ་	to see, to perceive; to obtain	ལྔ་གསལ་	past times; previously
མངོན་པ་	<u>Abhidharma</u>	ལྔ་གསལ་	<u>mantrum</u>
མངོན་དགའ་	to take delight or pleasure in	ལྔ་གསལ་པ་	a practitioner of the <u>tantra</u> ; thaumaturge
མངོན་ཤིང་	paranormal cognition, clairvoyance	ལྔ་ལྔ་	formerly
མངོན་ལྟ་	direct perception	ལྔ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	previously, formerly; first
		ལྔ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	forerunner, introduction; introductory, preparatory
		ལྔ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	former, previous; previously

ཅ་

ཅ་པ་ག་	things, stuff	ཅ་ཤིག་གསལ་	whatever kind of, anykind of
ཅན་	having, possessed of; endowed with	ཅ་པོ་	any
ཅི་མ་ཤིང་	how good it would be if . . .	ཅ་ག་	a, an

ਕੁੰ	beer	ਕੇ. ਕੁੰ	great, middle, small
ਕੁੰ	to break in half, to snap; to stop (as of raining)	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	great
ਕੁੰ	a nihilistic view	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	how big?
ਕੁੰ	punishment	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	largest, biggest
ਕੁੰ	water	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	purpose
ਕੁੰ	<u>Arbuda</u>	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	for the purpose of, for the sake of
ਕੁੰ	<u>Nirarbuda</u>	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	especially, expressly; purposely, on purpose; specially
ਕੁੰ	a great river	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	great, large
ਕੁੰ	P.N. of a place	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	greatly, widely
ਕੁੰ	pool	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	very much, extremely
ਕੁੰ	small, little	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	ritual, rite
ਕੁੰ	water and manure	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	way of performance of a ritual (rituals) (Hon.)
ਕੁੰ	little, small	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	power of magical creator, paranormal psychi power
ਕੁੰ	younger person; smaller (comparative of)	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	to compete in the power of magical creation
ਕੁੰ	rudimentary, inter- mediate, and super- ior; small, large, middle etc.	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	to allow, to permit
ਕੁੰ	wife	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	satisfaction
ਕੁੰ	minor, small stuff	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	to be parted; to be separated; to be resolved
ਕੁੰ	larger section	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	religion, teaching, doctrine; quality, phenomenon, thing; entity
ਕੁੰ	size; higher (or) lower, greater (or) smaller	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	P.N. of a person
ਕੁੰ	of a suitable size; of just the right size	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	<u>dharmakaya</u> , perfect incorporeal body
ਕੁੰ	major, larger (comparative of (ਕੇ)	ਕੇ. ਖੰ	Dharmakirti
		(ਕੇ. ਖੰ)	

ཚོས་ལྷན་	pious king, <u>dharmaraja</u>	མཚོག་ཏུ་	superior, excellent
ཚོས་ཇི་	<u>dharma</u> -master, master of religion	མཚོག་ཏུ་ལྷན་པ་	the best, the superior
ཚོས་ཐོག་	session (see note Lesson 2)	མཚོང་	to jump
ཚོས་ཏུག་	"Six Teachings" (of Naropa)	མཚོངས་	p. of མཚོང་
ཚོས་ལུགས་	on the religious side; on the side of virtue	མཚོད་	to worship; to make an offering
ཚོས་ལུགས་	denominational or doctrinal system, sect	མཚོད་པ་འོ་གནས་	worship
ཚོས་སྤྱོད་	the religious and secular, religious and politics	མཚོད་པ་འོ་	<u>stupa</u>
མཚོ་	to go	མཚོད་པ་འོ་གནས་	object of worship
མཚོ་མས་ལུགས་	P.N. of locale	མཚོད་པ་འོ་	ceremonial offering, religious offering
མཚོ་ས་	p. of མཚོ་	འཚེ་	to chew
མཚོ་ཏོ་	lips	འཚར་	to rise
		འཚོ་ལྷན་	signs of death, death omens
		འཚོ་འཕོ་	to die; to transmigrate
		འཚོ་བ་	death
		འཚོང་	to tie, to bind

ཇི་

ཇིག་པ་	bandit	ཇི་(ཇི་)རྩེ་མ་	(not) to give it any con- sideration, (not) to pay heed
ཇི་རྩེ་པ་	as many as (i.e. conventionally true). (see note Lesson 8)	ཇི་ཚུམ་	how much?
ཇི་ཏུ་པ་	as it is (i.e. ultimately true) (see note Lesson 8)	ཇི་པ་ཞིག་	exact, actual, as is
ཇི་ཏུ་པ་པ་ཞིག་	exactly, as it is	ཇི་སྤྱོད་	until
		ཇི་ལྷན་པ་	P.N. of a sect

लै.बं.	lord	लै.बं. (ब.)	v. to change
लै.बं.लै.	an epithet of Atisa	लै.बं.	n. lord, king
मदय.	to meet, to see	लै.बं. २ बरस.	king and subjects
मदय. २ युन.	to meet (Hon.)	लै.बं. उरु.	venerable, reverend
मदुग.	end	लै.बं. २ दुग.	following, follower
मदुग. २.	after (prep. with gen.)	लै.बं. म.	next
२दब.	to hide oneself, to sneak	लै.बं. म. लै.बं. म.	each latter
२दबस.	p. of २दब.	लै.बं. म. २ लै.बं. म.	the one after the next
२दग.	to destroy, to break; to be destroyed	लै.बं. म.	afterward
२दग. दु.	view to the impermanent	लै.बं. म. २ दग. ब.	v. to follow; to follow according to
२दग. दुव.	world	लै.बं. २ दग. स.	n. follower
२दग. दुव. यु. २.	future life	लै.बं.	to say, to speak, to utter
२दग. स.	to be afraid	लै.बं. म.	tongue (Hon.)
२दग. स. दुन.	Yamantaka	लै.बं. म. दु. म. ग. व. स.	to compose, to write (Hon.)
२दुग.	to allow; to enjoin; to put in; to enter, to initiate	लै.बं. म.	green
२दुग. २. म. म. स.	the mind of entry	लै.बं. म. २.	P.N. of a place
२दुग. २. म. यु. २.	steps of entry	लै.बं. म. २. म. २. म.	heavy
२दुग.	to put, to fix; to arrange, to order; to establish	लै.बं. म. २. म. २. म.	heavy sluggish
२दुग. म. म.	fixative meditation	लै.बं. म.	fut. of लै.
२दुग. स.	to destroy; to conquer, to overcome	लै.बं. म.	p. of लै.
		लै.बं. म. २. म. २. म.	p. and fut. of लै.
		लै.बं. म. २. म. २. म.	subject, topic
		लै.बं. म. २. म. २. म.	central subjects

३.

३.	fish	३८३८	a little, few
३व.	to listen	३८२.	scarcer, fewer
३व.सं.	<u>sravaka</u> , a disciple	३८२व.	<u>utsada</u>
३व.र.	<u>Sravaka</u> and <u>Pratyekabuddha</u>	३८२व.२.	around, in the environs of (prep. with gen.)
३व.र.व.	destitution, wretchedness	३८२व.	close to, near
३व.व.	degenerate; wretched, miserable	३८२व.३८२व.२.	the cognate passions
३व.स.	n. experience	३८२व.	partiality; distance
३व.स.(२.)	v. to deteriorate, to lower, to degen- erate	३८२व.३८२व.२.	impartially, without partiality
३व.स.सं.	songs of experience	३८२व.	danger
३व.स.सं.	experience	३८२व.२५व.२.	twenty-five
३व.स.सं.२.	to experience; to practice	३८२व.२५व.	twenty-seventh
३व.	to keep	३८२व.२.	harm, injury
३व.	to sleep; to lie down	३८२व.२.	evil; fault, objection
३व.	sun; day	३८२व.२५व.२.	disadvantages, bad effects
३व.क.२.	<u>pradesika</u> ; a small part	३८२व.२५व.	a buyer
३८.	twenty	३८२व.२५व.२.	passion obscurations
३८.सं.सं.	to take rebirth, to continue on (i.e. after death)	३८२व.	passions (see note Lesson 4)
३८.	(ref.) self, it	३८२व.२५व.	sleep; sleepiness, drowsiness
३८.सं.	day	३८२व.२५व.२.	dream
३८.सं.२.	everyday, daily	३८२व.२५व.२.	to sleep
३८.सं.२.	everyday, daily	३८२व.	two
३८.सं.२.	everyday, daily	३८२व.	friend
३८.सं.२.	everyday, daily	३८२व.२.	antidote

གཤིང་མ་	wrinkle	ལྗེས་	thought
མཉམ་	p. and fut. of ཉན་	སྐྱེས་ཏུ་	with the thought, i.e.
མཉམ་པ་	equal, even	ལྗེས་ཏུ་	"....."
མཉམ་པར་ཤེས་པ་ (པ་)	v. to be absorbed in meditative concentration n. meditative ab- sorption, meditative- trance	ལྗེས་ལྗེས་ཏུ་	degenerate time(s)
མཉམ་མེད་	incomparable	ལྗེས་ཏུ་	heart
མཉམ་ཏུ་	together; together with	ལྗེས་ཏུ་ལྗེས་ཏུ་	compassion
ལྗོངས་	to be or become old, to age (i.e. only of things not persons)	ལྗོངས་ལྗོངས་པོ་	great compassion
ལྗོངས་པ་	old (i.e. of things)	ལྗོངས་པ་ཐམས་པ་ནས་	from the very heart
ལྗོངས་མ་པ་	P.N. of a sect	ལྗོངས་པོ་	essence, pith; center
ལྗོངས་	to acquire, to get; to find, to discover.	ལྗོངས་པོ་ལོ་གཤམ་	nurse (Hon.)
ལྗོངས་པར་དཀའ་	difficult to find	ལྗོངས་པོ་འདོད་ལས་	to claim, to allege
ལྗོངས་ལྗོངས་	difficulty, complication	ལྗོངས་	to depreciate, to downgrade
ལྗོངས་ལྗོངས་	fame	ལྗོངས་ཏུ་	fut. of ལྗོངས་
ལྗོངས་མེད་ལྗོངས་	to report	ལྗོངས་ཏུ་	p. of ལྗོངས་
		ལྗོངས་ཏུ་	to acquire, to get, to obtain
		ལྗོངས་ཏུ་	the one day vow
		ལྗོངས་ཏུ་	full vow (i.e. of a biksu)

ད

དཀྱིལ་གྱི་ལྗོངས་ལྗོངས་	P.N. of a monastery	དཀྱིལ་ཚེས་	a little, slightly
དཀྱིལ་གྱི་ལྗོངས་ལྗོངས་	<u>samadhi</u> ; meditative concentration; mental focus	གཏང་	fut. of གཏང་
དཀྱིལ་གྱི་ལྗོངས་ལྗོངས་	<u>Samadhiraja-sutra</u>	གཏང་བ་ནས་	entirely
དཀྱིལ་	sesamum	གཏང་བ་མེད་	nothingness, nothing
དཀྱིལ་པོ་	Tilopa	གཏང་མ་	reputation, fame; speech

གཤི་ལུག་	ignorance	• དུམ་	<u>n.</u> object of worship
གཤིང་	depth	• དུམ་	<u>v.</u> to depend on, to have recourse to
གཤུབ་	fut. of འཕུབ་	• དུམ་སྐྱེ་	an object of worship belonging to one's share (of the family estate)
གཤེར་	treasure; treasury	• དུམ་	to think; to conceive
གཤོང་	to send; to release	• དུམ་མེད་ཀྱི་རྒྱུ་	the yoga of no idea-constriction
གཤོང་ལྷུ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་	a geshe who is to be a . . . (i.e. of such a class)	• དུམ་སྐྱེ་	to know; to understand
གཤོང་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་	to be able to give	• དུམ་(ལ་)	to see, to look at
གཤོང་	to set up, to open up, to establish	• དུམ་དུམ་	scrutiny
བདག་ལ་	p. of འདོག་ལ་	• དུམ་ལྷུ་ལྷོ་	to see, to meet
བདང་	p. of གཤོང་	• དུམ་ལྷོ་	theory and practice
བདང་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་	indifference, even-mindedness	• དུམ་ལ་	view, theory
བདམ་	p. of འདེམ་ལ་	• དུམ་ལ་བཀའ་བདག་ལ་	the four seals signifying a Buddhist theory
བདུང་	fut. of འཕུང་	• དུམ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་	like, as
བདུང་ལ་	p. of འཕུང་	• དུམ་ལ་	according
བདུབ་ལ་	p. of འཕུབ་	• དུམ་ལ་	simulated, counterfeit; fallacious
བདུལ་	p. of འཕུལ་	• དུམ་ལ་	to fall
བདོལ་	p. of འདོལ་	• དུམ་ལ་	main, principal; center, navel
ཏྲ་དབྱེད་ལ་	chant, hymn; <u>Asvaghosa</u> (P.N.)	• དུམ་ལ་འཕྲུལ་	at the navel
ཏྲ་ལ་ཏྲ་	always	• དུམ་	food
ཏྲ་ལ་ལ་	permanent	• དུམ་ལ་ལ་	food, clothes, and reputation
ཏྲ་ལ་ལ་ལ་	always	• དུམ་ལ་	food stuff
ཏྲ་ལ་ལ་	mark, sign, trace; logical reason	• དུམ་ལ་	to be hungry
ཏྲ་ལ་ལ་ཏྲ་ལ་	title of a grammatical work	• དུམ་ལ་ལ་ལ་	P.N. of a sect
ཏྲ་ལ་ལ་	duller, weaker, more feeble	• དུམ་ལ་	procedure, manner, wasy

འདུག་	seat; abode	• འདུག་	p. of འདུག་
འདུང་ཏུ་	upon; in addition to. (prep. with gen.)	• འདུག་ལས་	through recourse to ...
འདུག་	to get, to take	• འདུང་ཡུར་	a pole for tethering
འདུག་	to give	• འདུག་	fut. of འདུག་
འདུང་པ་ཟེར་	emptiness, voidness, sunyata	• འདུག་ས་ • འདུག་ས་	p. of འདུག་ depending upon
འདུང་	upper (i.e. upper part of body); Western Tibet	• འདུག་ • འདུག་འགྲོ་	fut. and p. of འདུག་ doctrine and living creatures
འདུག་	to show; to teach	• འདུག་འཇོས་	commentary, sastra
འདུག་ཁ་	autumn	• འདུག་ཁ་	source; (fig.) a central place, hub
འདུག་པ་	teacher	• འདུག་པ་	to accord with; to be in conformity with
འདུག་པ་	power, force	• འདུག་	fut. and p. of འདུག་
འདུག་	fut. of འདུག་	• འདུག་	praise
འདུག་འདུལ་	examination, investigation	• འདུག་འདུལ་	to praise, to eulogise
འདུག་ས་	p. of འདུག་	• འདུག་	praise and salutation
འདུག་པོ་	firm, stable	• འདུག་ཡུལ་	to destroy
འདུག་ལྷན་ལྷན་	religious discipline.	• འདུག་ལྷན་ལྷན་	

ཐ

ཐ་དད་	different	• ཐ་དད་	long distance
ཐ་བ་	even	• ཐ་བ་	painted scroll
ཐ་མ་	least, last	• ཐ་མ་	method, means
ཐ་ག་པ་	rope	• ཐ་ག་པ་	destitute; miserable, wretched
ཐ་ག་མཚན་	to decide; to det- ermine; to put an end to	• ཐ་ག་མཚན་ • ཐ་ག་མཚན་	to try to find all

ସକ୍ଷୟ: ଉଦୟ: ସ୍ୱାସ୍ତ୍ୟଃ	all-knowledge, omniscience	ସବଂ	to be able
ସମ୍	to be free, to be released	ସବଂ ଯଂ	sage, <u>muni</u>
ସମ୍ ଯଂ	release, freedom, emancipation, deliverance	ସଂକଳ୍ପଂ	uncertainty (i.e. between two alternatives); dilemma
ସଂ ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	Prasangika (Madhyamika)	ସଂଗା	to go
ସଂଗା	line; outline	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	vehicle
ସଂଗା ଯଂ	semen; dot	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଚକ୍ର ଯଂ	Mahayana
ସଂଗା	to reach the source or further limit; to meet, to touch	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଚକ୍ର	Hinayana
ସଂଗା ଯଂ	mind (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	the three vehicles
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	unable to bear (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	occasion, time
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	responsibility (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	hammer
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	of great importance (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	to descend on one, to happen to one
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	responsibility (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	the beginning, the middle and the end
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	to practice (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	about, concerning
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	to be attracted (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	the first, beginning
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	to be fully satisfied (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	to initiate, to introduce
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	to be satisfied (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	in addition to (prep. with gen.)
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	compassion (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	obstacle, impediment
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	disciple, son of one's thought	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	without obstacle, unobstructed
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	thought (Hon.)	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	to finish; to leave, to come out
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	short	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	progress, development
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	common, shared	ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	P. N. of a person
ସଂଗା ଯଂ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ ଶ୍ରୀ	exclusive; not common, not shared	ସଂଗା ଯଂ	to obtain, to get, to acquire
		ସଂଗା ଯଂ	to hear; to study, to learn

अधर	end, limit, boundary	अधर्यो	high
अधरं दण	all, every	अधर्योम	highest
अधरं गच्छेत् ५	definitely; pointedly, specifically	अधरं	to see, to perceive
अधरं न्य	unlimited; illimitable	अधरं क्खं	the present
अधरं	finally, at the end	अधरं क्षुद	riddance or riddances by seeing; seeing-riddance
अधरं प्रण	ultimate, final; n. the final end	अधरं न्यम	the path of seeing or of vision
अधरं शुक्यं	gone to the end, perfect	अधर्यो	high, tall
अधरं यः २ ५	until reaching the end	२ अधरं क्खं	quarrel and dispute
अधरं क्खं	<u>Kala-sutra</u>	२ अधरं २ ५	fight
अधरं	power, force	२ अधरं	to drink
अधरं	to be joined; to be connected	२ अधरं	to cut into pieces
अधरं शुक्यं	amicable conditions	२ अधरं २ ५	to be right, to be O.K.; to be approved
अधरं यः	in accord with, conformable to, consistent with	२ अधरं	contention
अधरं धरं	thumb	२ अधरं	fut. of अधरं
		२ अधरं	to be confused, to be bewildered
		२ अधरं	p. of अधरं

५

५	now	५ अधरं	correction, purification
५ ५	now, the present	५ अधरं यो वण २ ५	P.N. of a subject
५ ५ ५ अधरं	at this time	५ अधरं यो ५ ५	P.N. of a person
५ ५ ५ अधरं	still	५ ५	and, or
५ ५ ५ अधरं	at this time	५ ५ अधरं	first and second
५ अधरं	clean, pure		

དང་བཅས་	and, along with (see Lesson 1, note 8)	• དྲུག་པོ་ • ལྔ་ • ལྔ་	brute, animal time
དང་བཅས་ལྟར་	according to, relying upon	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	all the time, always
དང་ལྟར་	having, possessed of, endowed with	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	holiday, celebration, festival
དང་པོ་	first	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	an inappropriate time
དང་པོར་	at first, as first	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	time
དང་ལྟར་ལྟར་ ལྟར་ལྟར་	competition in	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	religious holiday, holy season
དང་ལྟར་	along with	• ལྔ་ • ལྔ་	that
དང་ལྟར་	to accept or take on voluntarily	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	reality
དང་ལྟར་	religious veneration. faith and respect	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	similarly; likewise
དང་ལྟར་	faith	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	to count as fulfilling the requirement
དང་ལྟར་	disputation; thesis; promise	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	afterwards
དང་ལྟར་	firm, stable; holy	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	oneself, itself
དང་ལྟར་	firmly	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	thus; so; such as this
དང་ལྟར་	the precepts of the tantric vow	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	in addition to this
དང་	to be spread	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	those
དང་ལྟར་གསལ་	to spread, to propagate (Hon.)	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	on account of that
དང་ལྟར་	widespread	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	such a
དང་ལྟར་ལྟར་	P.N. of a person	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	therefore, consequently
དང་ལྟར་	ribbon, bolt of cloth	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	then
དང་ལྟར་	wealth and leisure	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	taking it from that point; beginning from that; since then
དང་ལྟར་	many	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	even more so
དང་ལྟར་	the three poisons	• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	along with that
		• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	otherwise, except that ...
		• ལྔ་ལྟར་ • ལྔ་ལྟར་	so much

དེ་མཚུངས་	similarly	དེ་ལྟར་	a general mental image
དེ་ཚོ་	those	དེ་གི་	to recover
དེ་ལྟེན་	like that; in the same way	དེ་གི་ལོ་	severe; fierce; frightful, formidable
དེ་ལས་	moreover	དེ་གི་ལོ་	too much
དེ་ལྟར་ཅུང་	therefore	དེ་དང་	fut. of རྟོན་
དེ་ལས་ཐུན་ལས་	more miserable than that	དེ་དང་དེ་དེ་ལོ་	title of a book
དེ་དུས་ལོ་	during that time	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་	p. of རྟོན་
དེ་སངས་	present time, nowadays	དེ་ལོ་	attentiveness; mindfulness; recollection
དེ་ལ་	book	དེ་ལོ་	commemoration
དེ་མ་ཚུངས་	not only that	དེ་ལོ་	smell
དེ་ལོ་	load	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	pure, stainless, undefiled
དེ་གི་ལོ་	narrow, tight	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	kind
དེ་གི་ལོ་	doubt, uncertainty	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	"mindfulness of kindness"
དེ་གི་ལོ་ལོ་	to resolve uncertainty	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	"repayment of kindness"
དེ་གི་	meaning; object; objective, purpose	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	to repay a favor or kindness
དེ་གི་ལོ་ལོ་	the actual or real meaning	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	six
དེ་གི་ལོ་ལོ་	essentially	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	sixty
དེ་གི་ལོ་	for the benefit of	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	at, in front of
དེ་གི་ལོ་ལོ་	to strive for, to aim at; to aspire to.	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	secretary
དེ་གི་ལོ་ལོ་	aim, object of striving	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	dirt, stain
དེ་གི་ལོ་ལོ་	ultimately; an ultimately true or real	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	heat, warmth
དེ་གི་ལོ་	for the sake of (prep. with gen.)	དེ་ལོ་ལོ་	fut. of རྟོན་

གདངས་	v. to open (i.e. of the eyes, mouth, etc.) n. foreign accent; tone	གདག་གཞིན་མཉམ་	sameness of oneself and others and exchange of oneself and others
གདན་འདྲན་	invitation (Hon.)	གདན་	seven
གདན་འདྲན་བྱ་	to invite (Hon.)	གདན་ཚུ་	seventy
གདན་ས་	monastic center, (same meaning as , see Lesson 1, note 2)	གདན་སྐད་གདན་སྐད་	seven thousand and seven hundred
གདན་ས་ཡན་ཚུན་	from any one of the monastic centers	གད་སྐྱིད་	happiness and comfort
གདམ་	fut. of འདམས་	གད་འགྲོ་	those who go to a fortunate destiny or transmigration; a fortunate transmigration
གདམས་	fut. and P. of འདམས་	གད་མཚོ་ག་	Sambhara
གདམས་དག་	instruction, precepts	གད་བ་	adj. happy; easy n. happiness, felicity, ease
གདམས་པ་	instruction	གདོན་པ་བཞི་	the Four Truths
གཞུང་བཞུང་ཁོངས་	having partilineal descent from	མདའ་	arrow
གཞུང་	fut. of འདུང་	མདའ་བརྒྱབ་	to shoot an arrow
གཞུང་བྱ་	one to be trained or to bring himself under control via the Buddhist <u>dharma</u>	མདུན་	in front of, before
གདོད་	competence	མདོ་	<u>sutra</u>
གདོན་	v. fut. of འདོན་ n. evil spirit, demon	མདོ་སྐད་པ་	title of a <u>sutra</u>
བདག་	self, I; atman	མདོ་སྐད་ཚུན་	<u>sutralamkara</u>
བདག་པོ་	master, owner	མདོ་སྐད་པ་	Sautrantika
བདག་པོའི་འབྲས་བུ་	the controlling result	མདོ་སྐད་མཉམ་མོང་སྐྱབ་ཚུ་པ་	title of a <u>sutra</u>
བདག་མེད་	without a self, non-self, <u>anatman</u>	མདོ་སྐྱོན་གས་	on the <u>sutra</u> side (in contradistinction to the <u>tantra</u> side)
བདག་འཛིན་	the apprehension of a self	མདོ་སྐད་	P.N. of a place
		མདོ་སྐད་པ་	" <u>Agamanula</u> "
		མདོ་སྐྱབ་པ་	the system of the <u>sutra</u>

མདོག་	cast, appearance; color	• འདམ་པ་	<u>Vinaya</u>
མདོག་མདོག་ཕྱེད་	to pretend; to indicate by a gesture or sign	• འདམ་	p. of འདམ་
མདོད་བསམས་	briefly, in brief	• འདམ་ཕྱེས་	caused; conditioned
འདའ་	to go beyond; to transcend	• འདམ་ཚོགས་	assemblage
འདམ་	p. of འདའ་	• འདེབས་	to found, to establish; to sow
འདི་	this	• འདོགས་	to hang; to put a name
འདི་འདམ་	such as this; such a	• འདོད་	to desire, to wish for; to accept, to admit
འདི་འདམ་འདི་	such and such	• འདོད་ཁམས་	the desire region kamadhātu (of the threefold Buddhist cosmos)
འདི་འདམ་འདི་	at this point	• འདོད་ཚལ་	attachment
འདེབས་	to be collected; to be included; to be abridged; to be comprehended	• འདོད་པ་	wish, desire; admission, acceptance
འདེབས་ཕྱེད་	(act of) condition- ing; something which is conditioned	• འདོད་པ་བླང་བ་ཞིབ་	as one wishes
འདུ་འཛོམས་	a gathering to- gether; collection	• འདོད་པ་འདི་སྒྲ་	a god of the desire region
འདུ་ཤེས་	perception, thought, mental formation (as a discrimination or a singling out)	• འདོན་	to take out, to recite; to exit, to come forth
འདུག་	to be; "auxiliary verb"	• འདོམས་(པ་)	to instruct
འདུག་པོ་ཡོད་	That's how it is. It's like that.	• འདུ་པོ་	similar, like
འདུག་པོ་མེད་	It's like that.	• འདུ་མི་འདུ་	different, disparate; different kinds of
འདུམ་	to tame; to train, to discipline, to subdue	• འདུ་མི་བླ་སྒྲ་ཚོགས་	different kinds, variety
འདུམ་ཁྲིམས་	the rules of the Vinaya	• འདུ་	<u>v.</u> to mix up, to confuse <u>n.</u> demon
		• འདུ་བླ་	to draw out, to elicit; to derive
		• འདུ་མ་	p. of འདུ་
		• འདུ་	to beat, to strike

ॐ म. न.	maimed, limbless	ॐ म.	subclass, subsection, subgroup
ॐ म.	dust	ॐ म. व. द. क.	the seven treatises (on logic by Dharmakirti)
ॐ म. क. र. ॐ	colored stone dust	ॐ म. व. द. क.	
ॐ म. क. र. ॐ	stone	ॐ म. व. द. क.	<u>Tripitika</u> , "the three baskets"
ॐ म. क. र. ॐ	lotus posture; <u>padmasana</u>	ॐ म. व. द. क.	<u>Ganda-vhyuha</u> (name of a <u>sutra</u>)
ॐ म. क. र. ॐ	Vajrayana	ॐ म. व. द. क.	to stay, dwell; to posture
ॐ म.	to rub	ॐ म.	to restrain
ॐ म.	to arise, to stand	ॐ म.	vow
ॐ म. य.	having, possessed of.	ॐ म. य.	Dharmakirti
ॐ म. य.	double	ॐ म. य.	Dharmapala
ॐ म. य.	key	ॐ म. य.	p. of ॐ म.
ॐ म. य.	to reverse, to turn back or away	ॐ म. य.	fut. of ॐ म.
ॐ म. य. ॐ म.	the opposite, the reverse	ॐ म. य.	p. of ॐ म.
ॐ म. य. ॐ म.	an attitude of hatred, hostility	ॐ म. य.	fut. and p. of ॐ म.
ॐ म. य.	evil, vice	ॐ म. य.	fut. of ॐ म.
ॐ म. य. ॐ म.	suffering, misery, pain; ill	ॐ म. य.	p. of ॐ म.
ॐ म. य.	pleasant, attractive	ॐ म. य.	fut. of ॐ म.
ॐ म. य.	bad, evil; miserable	ॐ म. य.	p. of ॐ म.
ॐ म.	to collect; to abridge, to summarize, to epitomize; to contain in, to comprehend	ॐ म. य. ॐ म.	name for a class of elementary textbooks on logic
		ॐ म. य. ॐ म.	Samghata

व.

व.व.	to be ill	• व.व. (य.)	<u>v.</u> to disappear
व.क.	pain	• व.व.	<u>n.</u> west
व.पु.व.	pain	• व.स. (य.)	to be able
व.र.य.	Naropa	• व.स. य.	ability, capacity, power; potential, potentiality
व.य.व.	Nalanda	•	
व.व.य.	black	• व.स. केंद्र.	to the extent of one's ability
व.व.क. य. कृ. व.	epithet of a person	• व.रे. (य.)	<u>v.</u> to be mistaken
व.व. वी. कृ. य. श्रु. र.	inner yoga	• व.र.	<u>n.</u> wealth
व.व. य. य.	contradiction	• व.रे. य. य.	error
व.व. दु.	within (prep.)	• व.रे. य. य. क. व. दु.	to be deluded or mistaken
व.व. व. स.	from, among	• व.व. व. य.	things which one has to do (Hon.)
व.व. य.	Buddhist	• व.व. व. य. य.	way or system of doing (Hon.)
व.व. क. व.	within	• व.व. व. य.	day after tomorrow
व.व. व. वि. व.	like, similar to	• व.व. व.	pith, essential, point
व.व. य.	in, within (prep. with gen.)	• व.व. व. य. य.	salient features, key points
व.व. य. य. य.	within	• व.व. व. य. व.	essence, pith
व.व.	disease, sickness	• व.व. व. य. व.	a quite important point
व.व. य.	sick man, patient	• व.व. व. य. व. व. क.	airplane
व.व. य. य. य.	nurse, nursing	• व.व. व. य.	<u>v.</u> to remain, to stay
व.व. व. व.	intensity, effort, exertion	• व.व. य. (य.)	<u>n.</u> object; place
व.व. य.	when	• व.व. य.	temporarily, for the time being
व.व. य. य. य. य.	sky, space	• व.व. य. य. य. य.	steadiness
व.व. य. य. य.	generally, usually	• व.व. य. य.	<u>sthavira</u> , elder
व.व. य. य. य. य. य.	as is commonly said	• व.व. य. य. य. य.	Vatsiputriya
व.व. य.	barely	• व.व. य. य. य. य.	

གནས་ཚུལ་	inn	ལྷན་དག	pure, purified
གནས་ཚུལ་	conditions, situation, news	ལྷན་དག་ལྷན་ཚུལ་	name of a kind of stupa
གནས་ལུགས་	actual condition of existing	ལྷན་ལྷན་	Vairocana
གནོད་	to injure; to be injured	ལྷན་པ་	aspect
གནོད་དཀའ་	a possible danger	ལྷན་པར་འཇོམས་	to conquer
གནོད་པ་	harm, injury	ལྷན་པར་ལྷན་ལའོ་	Vairocana
གནོད་པ་སྐྱེ་	to do harm	ལྷན་པར་གཤེད་པ་	to be distracted
གནོད་འཚེ་	harm, injury	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	the result of maturation
གནོད་སེམས་	the wish to injure	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	title of a book
གནོན་	to press down, to oppress	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	yoga; meditation
མཐུན་	fut. and p. of གནོན་	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	nose
མཐུན་མ་	daughter-in-law	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	various
མཐུན་	to suffer	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	to lighten; to appear, to seem
མཐུན་མེད་	avici hell	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	appearance; light
མཐུན་	dream (Hon.)	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	to destroy
ལྷན་ལྷན་	pus and blood	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	end
ལྷན་གྲངས་	many different varieties of; synonym	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	to smell (Pl.) to take up, to carry (Hon.)
ལྷན་འགྲེལ་	<u>Pramanavarttika</u>	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	covetousness
ལྷན་ཚུལ་	thought, ideation, idea-construction	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	fut. of ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་
ལྷན་ཐུག་	exemplary biography, story of a model life	ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	p. of ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་
		ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	fut. of ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་
		ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་	p. of ལྷན་པར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འབྲས་

བ་

བ་ཡ་	father	དཔེ་རྒྱུན་	to model on
པཎི་ཏ་	<u>pandit</u>	དཔེ་ག་	to infer, to know by inference
ཡུ་ཡ་ལྷན་གསུམ་	the three "palas"	ཉལ་	fut. and p. of
པགས་པ་	skin	ཉལ་སྒྲུབ་	analytic meditation
པད་	lap	ཉལ་གསུམ་	threefold scrutiny and examination
པད་མ་འབྲུང་ ཉལ་བ་	the lotus born (epithet of Padma-sambhava)	ཉལ་དོ་	to examine, investigate
པད་མ་ཉལ་གསུམ་པ་	<u>padma</u> (hell)	མྱེང་	fut. of མྱེང་
པད་མ་ཉལ་ཆེན་གསུམ་པ་	<u>mahapadma</u> (hell)	མྱེང་བྱ་	a riddable; qualities to be got rid of (see note Lesson 18)
པཎ་ཆེན་	great <u>pandit</u> ; Panchen Lama	མྱེང་བྱས་ཀྱི་ལྡུང་བ་	the action of developing and avoiding
ཡུ་གུ་ (ཡུ་གུ་གུ་)	child	མྱེང་ས་	p. of མྱེང་
དཔག་	fut. of དཔོག་	མྱེང་ས་པའི་པོ་ལོ་དཔ་	qualities of riddance, riddance qualities
དཔག་ཏུ་མེད་པ་	immeasurable, incalculable	མྱེང་ས་	hair
དཔགས་	p. of དཔོག་	མྱེང་ས་	to further; to increase, to develop
དཔའ་པོ་	hero; Asvaghosa (P.N.)	མྱེང་ས་ཡུགས་	way of increasing
དཔའ་ལྷི་དོ་དེ་	P. N. of a person	མྱེང་	to relinquish; to abandon; to get rid of, to avoid
དཔའ་ལྷི་ལོ་ལྷོ་ས་	Sri Dharmapala (P.N.)	མྱེང་བྱ་	invitation (Hon.)
དཔའ་ལྷི་ལོ་ལྷོ་ས་	shoulder	མྱེང་བྱས་ཀྱི་གསུམ་	Avalokitesvara
དཔེ་	model, example	མྱེང་བ་	generally speaking, in general
དཔེ་ཆ་	book	མྱེང་བྱ་གུ་	crown of the head
དཔེ་དོན་རྒྱུ་	to relate the meaning and the example	མྱེང་པོ་	western year, year of the western calendar
དཔེ་དོན་ལྟ་	for example		
དཔེ་རྒྱུན་	example; sign, mark		
དཔེ་རྒྱུན་བརྒྱུད་ཏུ་	eighty minor marks (of the Buddha)		

ལྷོད་	in general, generally, generally. speaking	ལྷོད་	fut. and p. of ལྷོད་
ལྷོད་པ་	in general	ལྷོད་པ་	cloud
ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	<u>Bodhicaryavatarce</u>	ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	magical creation
ལྷོད་པ་	practice; conduct	ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	to radiate (as the sun radiates rays); to delight in, to take pleasure in
ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	activity; conduct	ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	p. of ལྷོད་
ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	beggar	ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	to offer, to give
ཕ་			
ཕ་	father	ཕ་ལོན་	benefit, advantage
ཕ་མ་	parents	ཕ་མ་	p. of ཕ་མ་
ཕ་འོག་	the other side	ཕ་འོག་ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	to go back and forth
ཕ་འོག་ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	the Six Paramitas, the six perfections	ཕ་འོག་ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	<u>prajna paramita,</u> the perfection of wisdom
ཕ་ག་པ་	pig	ཕ་ག་པ་	
ཕ་དམ་པ་	esteemable, valuable.	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	back and forth
ཕ་དམ་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	parsimony	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	far from . . . , putting aside . . . , not even to mention . . .
ཕ་ན་	to help, to assist	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	mostly, almost, for the most part
ཕ་ན་གྱི་གས་	auxiliary, helper	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	to determine the extent of (as of a river, cave, etc.), to fathom the depth of
ཕ་ན་ཆད་	from . . . on (time expression)	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	
ཕ་ན་ཐོག་གས་	benefit	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	<u>skandha;</u> (mind-body) aggregate
ཕ་ན་ཕད་	benefit and happiness	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	excellent, admirable, desirable
ཕ་ན་འདོག་གས་	to help, to assist	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	p. of ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་
ཕ་ན་ལྷོད་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	back and forth, mutually; each of the	ཕ་ག་པའི་ལྷོད་པ་	

अल्पः	a little	अल्पकृत्येयः	percipitative action
अल्पः	child	अल्पवः	to grow, to increase
अल्पः	garland; rosary	अल्पः	to transfer; to transmigrate
अर्यः	arya; noble	अर्यः	p. of अर्यः
अर्यः	aryan individual	अर्यः	to meet; to encounter
अर्यादेवः	Aryadeva	अर्यकृत्यः	deeds, actions (Hon.)
अर्यः	fut. of अर्यः	अर्यकः	to steal, to take by force
अर्यः	p. of अर्यः	अर्यकः	p. of अर्यकः
अर्यः	to fly	अर्यः	to be suitable, to be fit; to be received
अर्यः	to throw, to hurl	अर्यः	
अर्यकृत्यः	shooter, thrower; hurler		

१

विक्रमसिला	inherent tendency; habit formation; propensity	विक्रमसिला	Vikramasila (P.N.)
विमलमित्रः	storage bin	विमलमित्रः	Vimalamitra (P.N.)
विरुपा	treasury	विरुपा	Virupa (P.N.)
विरुपा	interruption	विरुपा	son, boy
विरुपा	(from) . . . up to	विरुपा	child, offspring
विरुपा	neutral; the middle one	विरुपा	girl
विरुपा	up to, until (prep. with gen.); between	विरुपा	P.N. of a sect
विरुपा	in the middle of, between (prep.)	विरुपा	woman
विरुपा	up to; until	विरुपा	jar, pot
विरुपा	Nepal	विरुपा	P.N. of a person
		विरुपा	to use, to employ
		विरुपा	Tibet

འོན་གྱི་ཚོས་	the Bon religion	འོན་ས་	the most, the general, the common
ཕྱི་ས་	p. of འཕྲོད་	འོན་	p. of འཕྲོད་
ཕྱི་	bird	འོན་གྱི་	a specific, a particular
ཕྱི་བ་	action	འོན་གྱི་ཕྱི་བ་	in particular
ཕྱི་བྱེད་	without action, inactivity	འོན་གྱི་ཕྱི་བ་ཏུ་	Vaibhasika
ཕྱི་	north	འོན་གྱི་ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་	false, pretended
ཕྱི་ཚུལ་གྱི་སེལ་མ་	the mind to enlightenment	འོན་གྱི་	things which one must do
ཕྱི་ཚུལ་ལྟར་སེལ་གྱི་	<u>Bodhipatha-pradipa</u>	འོན་ཕྱི་བ་	to do, perform, act
ཕྱི་ཚུལ་ལྟར་སེལ་གྱི་	P.N. of a person	འོན་གྱི་སྲོལ་	way or system of doing
ཕྱི་ཚུལ་	P.N. of a monastic college	འོན་	p. of འཕྲོད་
ཕྱི་ས་	<u>Bodhisattvabhumi</u>	ཕྱི་བ་	crag
ཕྱི་སེལ་ས་	<u>bodhisattva</u>	ཕྱི་བ་ལ་	without, devoid of
ཕྱི་སེལ་ས་	love	ཕྱི་བ་ས་	p. of འཕྲོད་
ཕྱི་སེལ་ས་ལྟར་གྱི་	the Natha Maitreya	ཕྱི་བ་ས་	p. of འཕྲོད་
ཕྱི་སེལ་ས་ལྟར་གྱི་	<u>The Twenty Works Pertaining to Maitreya</u>	ཕྱི་བ་	to raise; to rise
ཕྱི་སེལ་ས་ལྟར་གྱི་	love, affection	ཕྱི་བ་ཆེན་པོ་(ཕྱི་བ་ཆེན་པོ་ལྟར་)	p. of འཕྲོད་
ཕྱི་སེལ་ས་ལྟར་གྱི་	to fondle affectionately, to carress	ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	great lama
ཕྱི་ས་	made	ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	incomparable, unsurpassable
ཕྱི་ས་ལྟར་ལ་	It is said, isn't it? It is done, isn't it?	ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	<u>guru</u>
ཕྱི་ས་ལྟར་	therefore	ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	lead lama
ཕྱི་ས་ལྟར་ལ་	when this had occurred	ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	fut. of ལེན་
ཕྱི་ས་	to sink down	ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	cultivation avoidance
ཕྱི་ས་བ་	lethargy, torpor	ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	qualities to be cultivated
		ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	p. of ལེན་
		ཕྱི་བ་ལྟར་ལ་	to ransom

ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	p. of ལྔ་	ལྔ་ཡུལ་	Madhyamika
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	manuals or systems of mental discipline.	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	<u>Madhyamakavatara</u>
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	from memory	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	Title of a book
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	P.N. of a person	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	unheaded (letters)
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	to memorize	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	poor, destitute
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	minister	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	middle; center; Central Tibet
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	to memorize	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	solitary
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	to give up, to renounce, to sacrifice	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	<u>Madhyanta-vibhaga</u>
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	power, force	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	P.N. of a mountain
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	by virtue of, by power of	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	summer
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	one who controls or dominates	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	<u>varsika</u> ; summer retreat (see note Lesson 3)
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	power	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	acceptance of the precepts for the summer retreat (Hon.)
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	power	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	shape
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	from the point of view of	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	Vasubandha
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	organ	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	p. of ལྔ་ལྔ་
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	sense consciousness	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	subdivision, classification
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	fut. of ལྔ་ལྔ་	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	inseparable
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	head (Hon.); beginning, starting point	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	effortlessly, without effort
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	hair of the head (Hon.)	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	effort
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	leader	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	protrusion
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	headed (letters)	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	to assign; to offer (Hon.)
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	rank, position	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	to descend, to come down, to be brought down
ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	tuft of hair (Hon.)	ལྔ་ཡུལ་གྱི་ལཱ་ལྔ་ལྔ་	

२३६.	to call, to invite . . .	आ.	fut. of आ.
२३७.	to arise, to occur; . . .	आ.	fut. of आ.
	to be . . .	आ.	p. of आ.
२३८. आरम्भ.	origin, source . . .	आरम्भ.	p. of आरम्भ.
२३९. चतुर्भुज.	the four elements . . .	चतुर्भुज.	p. of चतुर्भुज.
२४०.	to divide, to . . .	वि.	P.N. of a person
	distinguish; to . . .	वि.	cavity, hollow
	initiate, to start . . .	आरम्भ.	to hide, to bury
२४१.	to come . . .	आ.	to soak
२४२.	to reach, to obtain . . .	आ.	to ignite; to illuminate;
२४३. धन.	wealth . . .	धन.	to flash, to blaze
२४४. आश्रम.	P.N. of a monastery . . .	आश्रम.	fruit; result, . . .
२४५. फल.	effect . . .	फल.	effect . . .
२४६.	to write; to draw; . . .	लेख.	effect . . .
	to delineate . . .	लेख.	effect . . .
२४७. आश्रम.	P.N. of a sect . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
२४८.	middle, intermediate. . .	मध्य.	effect . . .
२४९. आश्रम.	P.N. of a sect . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
२५०. आश्रम.	to cut; to shave . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
२५१. आश्रम.	pertaining to, . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
	related to, in . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
	connection with, . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
	relevant to . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
२५२. आश्रम.	epithet of a person . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
२५३. आश्रम.	epithet of a person . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
२५४.	to flee, to escape . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .
२५५.	completely . . .	आश्रम.	effect . . .

མ་

མ་འཁོར་བར་	until one's turn comes	• མ་རྒྱལ་མ་	"understanding as mother"
མ་གཤམ་	Magadha	• མ་	man, men, people
མ་མཁན་	"old mother"	• མི་ཁྱིམ་	family
མ་གཏོགས་	except	• མི་དག་ལུ་	the ten nonvirtues
མ་སྤོང་བར་	until, empty or void	• མི་ཚོགས་ཡེ་ཕྱི་ལུ་	ought not; is not supposed to
• མ་ཤག་	immediately	• མི་རྒྱལ་མ་	impermanent
མ་མཚན་	at least, at the lower extremity	• མི་ཚོགས་	generations
མ་ཕྱིན་གོང་	before finishing	• མི་འདྲ་མ་	different
མ་ལྱུང་མ་ལྡོག་	stealing	• མི་གཙང་མ་	uncleanliness
མ་ཚར་བར་ལ་	until completing	• མི་ཚང་	family
མ་གཞི་	basic	• མི་ཚོང་མ་	life-sized
མ་གཞི་ནས་	basically	• མི་ཚོན་	smallest regional subdivision within a monastic college (see Lesson 1, note 3)
མ་ཟད་	not only . . . (see note Lesson 3)	• མི་ཡ་རྒྱལ་མ་	P.N. or epithet of a person
མ་ཤོངས་མ་	the future	• མི་ལུས་	a human; human body
མ་རམས་	low, disreputable or ill-mannered people	• མིའི་ལུས་འཛིན་	the body of a human (i.e. a human life)
མ་རྒྱལ་མ་	nascence	• མི་སྐོབ་ལམ་	the path of no further training
མ་ལུས་མ་	without exception	• མི་གཤམ་	eye
མང་མ་	many	• མི་གཤམ་ཡོང་མ་	blind man
མང་ཚོམ་	quite a few	• མིང་	name, terminology
མན་དག་	instructions, precepts	• མིང་འདུགས་རྒྱལ་	to obtain the name or title of geshe
མར་	butter	• མིང་འདུགས་	v. to name, to designate by a name
མར་མ་	epithet of a person	•	n. name, title
མར་མེ་	butter lamp	•	

མེད་པ་	throat	མེད་པ་	quickly
ཕེ་	edge, end	མེད་པ་	experience
ཕེ་ལ་གསེང་།	non Buddhist, Tirthika	དམར་པོ་	low
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	to continue, to take up where one leaves off	དམར་པོ་ལྷན་པ་	to lower, to depress
ཕེ་ལ་པ་	darkness	དམར་པོ་	epithet of a person; red
ཕེ་	fire	དམར་པོ་ལྷན་པ་	P.N. of a person
ཕེ་ལ་	"the five ..", i.e. a form of austerity in Brahmanism	དམིགས་པ་ལྷན་པ་	meditative support, meditative object
ཕེ་ལ་	flower	དམིགས་པ་	object of perception, object of conception, object of meditation
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	Maitripa	དམིགས་པ་ལྷན་པ་	one who leads a blind person
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	gun	དམིགས་པ་ལྷན་པ་	object of meditation object of awareness
ཕེ་ལ་	ember	དམིགས་པ་ལྷན་པ་	special, particular
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	firepit, pit of fire	དམིགས་པ་ལྷན་པ་	denizens of hell
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	cannot do without, indispensible	ཕེ་ལ་	dream
ཕེ་ལ་	not; not to be, absent, non- existent	ཕེ་ལ་	darkness
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	to make <u>nil</u> ; to eradicate	ཕེ་ལ་	ignorance
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	the three king parents (i.e. of the spread of Buddhism in Tibet)	ཕེ་ལ་	P.N. of a monastic college; lower part; Eastern Tibet
ཕེ་ལ་	esteem, liking; a general notion	ཕེ་ལ་	medicine
ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	<u>nirvana</u>	ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	to treat (medically); to cure
ཕེ་ལ་	sprout	ཕེ་ལ་	to ripen, to mature
		ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	the mind of wishing
		ཕེ་ལ་ལྷན་པ་	prayer; P.N. of a festival

ལྷོད་	to become out of control (like drunk, insane, etc.)	ལྷོད་	p. of ལྷོད་
ལྷོད་པ་	a madman	ལྷོད་	to say, to advocate
		ལྷོད་	p. of ལྷོད་

ཚ་

ཚེ་	just, only, mere	འཚོ་གི་	fut. of འཚོ་གི་
ཚེ་པོ་པ་	a mere . . .	འཚོ་བྱ་པ་	prisoner
ཚོང་ཁ་པ་	P.N. of a person	འཚོ་བྱ་ཁང་	jail, prison
གཙང་	Tsang (P.N. of a province)	འཚོ་བྱ་རྩ་	jail, prison
གཙང་རབ་གསལ་	P.N. of a person	འཚོ་བྱ་པ་འདུག་	to put in jail
གཙུག་ལྷན་	crown ornament	འཚོ་མ་	p. of འཚོ་དྭ་
གཙུག་ལག་ཁང་	temple	ཚ་	bein
གཙོ་	fut. of འཚོ་	ཚ་རྒྱུད་	root <u>tantra</u> ; <u>mulatantra</u>
གཙོ་མ་	p. of འཚོ་	ཚ་བས་	from (i.e. of a person) (Pl.)
གཙོ་ཆེར་	greatly, widely	ཚ་བ་	root; root text
གཙོ་བོ་	<u>n.</u> leading principle. <u>adj.</u> chief, principal.	ཚ་བ་ཆེན་པོ་	very precious, of great value
གཙོ་བོར་	principally	ཚ་བ་བས་	from the root
འཚོ་མ་	p. of འཚོ་མ་	ཚ་བ་བས་ལྟོ་མ་	free at the root
འཚོ་རྩ་	p. of འཚོ་རྩ་	ཚ་བའི་དཔྱེ་བ་	principal division or classification
འཚོ་གསལ་	p. of འཚོ་གསལ་	ཚ་རྒྱུད་གླིག་ལེ་	veins, breath, and semen
འཚོ་བྱ་པ་	<u>adj.</u> venerable <u>n.</u> monk	ཚ་ཤེས་རྒྱལ་པོ་	title of a book
འཚོ་བྱ་མོ་	queen	ཚ་	grass
འཚོ་མས་	p. of འཚོ་མས་		
འཚོ་	fut. of འཚོ་དྭ་		

કુદ્ ગર્હદ્	investigation, searching out, searching for	• કુદ્ (અ.) • કુદ્	v. to compose, to write n. composition
કુદ્ (અ.)	v. to count, reckon; enumerate	• કુદ્ અ. અ. અ.	composer, writer
કુદ્	n. luster	• કુદ્ અ. અ.	effort
કુદ્ કુદ્	coarse behavior	• વકુદ્	fut. of કુદ્
કુદ્ (અ.)	v. fut. of કુદ્	• વકુદ્ અ. અ.	p. of કુદ્
કુદ્	n. summit, peak	• વકુદ્	fut. of કુદ્
કુદ્ ગર્હદ્ ગુદ્	one-pointedly	• વકુદ્ અ.	p. of કુદ્
કુદ્ અ.	peak, tip	• વકુદ્ અ. અ. ગુદ્ ગર્હદ્	to check the recitation (Hon.)
કુદ્	to play, to sport	• વકુદ્ અ.	compassion
કુદ્ અ.	p. of કુદ્	• વકુદ્ અ. અ. અ.	manly effort
કુદ્	to dispute, to debate, to discuss	• વકુદ્ અ. અ.	effort
કુદ્ અ. અ.	debate, disputation		

કઠ્

કઠ્ અ.	hot	• કઠ્ અ. અ.	instead of (prep.)
કઠ્ અ.	Tapana (hell); fever	• કઠ્ અ. (અ.)	to finish
કઠ્ અ.	nest	• કઠ્ અ.	word
કઠ્ અ. અ.	to be complete	• કઠ્ અ. અ. અ.	subject, topic
કઠ્ અ. અ.	all, complete	• કઠ્ અ. અ. અ.	harsh speech
કઠ્ અ. અ. અ.	Brahma	• કઠ્ અ. અ.	to be begun
કઠ્ અ.	measurement	• કઠ્ અ.	back from
કઠ્ અ. અ.	epistemology, logic, <u>pramana</u>	• કઠ્ અ.	way, manner
કઠ્ અ. અ. અ. અ. અ.	<u>Pramanasamuccaya</u>	• કઠ્ અ. અ. અ. અ.	a lawful conduct, ethics

ཚུལ་མིན་	inappropriate, un- according, improper	• ཚོར་(མ་)	to feel
ཚུལ་བཞིན་དུ་	according to the custom, correctly, accordingly, proper- ly	• ཚོར་མ་	feeling
ཚུལ་བཞིན་ཡིད་	to fix (or place) the thought correctly	• མཚན་	sign, mark (Pl.); name (Hon.)
ཚུལ་ལྟར་	first part of life, earlier life	• མཚན་གྲགས་	famous (Hon.)
ཚུལ་གྱི་	short life	• མཚན་རྟེན་	philosophy; def- inition; character
ཚུལ་འདྲར་	in this life; in the present life	• མཚན་རྟེན་འཛུལ་	one possessing the qualities of . . .
ཚུལ་གྱི་མ་	the second part of life, latter life	• མཚན་རྟེན་	reknown, reputation
ཚུལ་རྗེས་(མ་)	(in) later life	• མཚན་བདག་པོ་	name title (Hon.)
ཚུལ་ཚད་	measure of life, life span	• མཚན་བདག་པོ་གནང་	to do one's geshe (Hon.)
ཚུལ་འདྲམ་	a life	• མཚན་ལྟས་	dream omen, dream revelation (Hon.)
ཚུལ་རྒྱུ་ལོ་	a long life	• མཚན་བཟང་པོ་སུམ་	thirty-two major marks (of the Buddha)
ཚུལ་མ་	thorn	• ལྷ་ཚུ་གཟུངས་	demarcation, partition (temporal or spacial)
ཚུལ་	date (i.e. day of the month)	• མཚན་མ་	one who is set off (i.e. a recluse)
ཚུལ་འགོ་	at the early part (of the month)	• མཚན་མ་མ་	sometimes
ཚུལ་གཟུངས་ཚུལ་	on the first day of the month	• མཚན་མ་གཡོག་	the helper or attendant of a recluse
ཚོགས་པ་	assembly; gathering; accumulation	• མཚུངས་པ་	to be like, to resemble
ཚོགས་རྣམ་པ་	one of the four grades of geshe	• མཚོ་ཁག་	P.N. of a regional division within monastic college
ཚོགས་ལམ་	the path of accumulating	• མཚོ་ལྷོ་	to show; to exemplify; to illustrate
ཚོགས་མཚན་	name of a religious festival	• མཚོ་ལྷོ་ཆ་	weapon
ཚོང་	selling, trade, barter	• མཚོ་ལྷོ་རྟོ་	symbol; representation
		• མཚོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་	to strike with a weapon

अर्कवैश्व	for example	• अर्कवः	livelihood;
अर्कमयः	suitable	•	necessities of
अर्कः	to squeeze	• अर्कणः	life
अर्कः	to enter; to go	• अर्कणम्	to beat
उत्	into; to be put into.	•	to assemble, to
अर्कः	to harm, to injure	• अर्कः	gather together,
अर्कः	dislike; uneasiness	• अर्कम्	to congregate
अर्कः	to be restored, to	•	to boil; to cook
अर्कः	recover; to tend	•	to seek, to
		•	search for

६

जिनमित्रः	Jinamitra (P.N.)	• जिनमित्रः	class
अर्कः	to do, make (Hon.);	• अर्कणम्	to establish, to
	to compose	•	institute; to
अर्कः	things which one	• अर्कणम्	stick into
	has to do;	•	to close (eyes,
	celebration (Hon.)	• अर्कणम्	mouth etc.)
अर्कः	action, act, deed	• अर्कणम्	to enter
	(Hon.)	• अर्कणम्	to climb
अर्कः	finger	• अर्कणम्	p. of अर्कणम्
अर्कः	beautiful	• अर्कम्	reluctance
अर्कः	<u>Abhidharmakosa</u> ;	• अर्कणम्	to be careful about,
	treasury	•	to be reluctant
अर्कणम्	to fall	•	about (i.e. a
अर्कः	to be finished, to	• अर्कणम्	difficulty)
	be ended, to be	• अर्कम्	p. of अर्कम्
	exhausted, to be	•	to gather together,
	consumed	•	to come together
अर्कः	Jambudvīpa, this	• अर्कणम्	p. of अर्कम्
	world continents	• अर्कणम्	mire, mud hole
अर्कः	to hold, grasp,	• अर्कणम्	
	apprehend	• अर्कणम्	

ਸ਼ੁੱਠ	substance	• ਸ਼ੁੱਠੀ ਕਰਮ	complementary action
ਸੁੱਠ	pool	• ਸੁੱਠੀ ਕਰਮ	perfecting stage
ਸੁੱਠੀ ਸ਼ੁੱਠੀ	supernormal psychic power	• ਸੁੱਠੀ ਕਰਮ	practioneer or the developing stages (see note Lesson 3)
ਸੁੱਠੀ	lie, lying	• ਸੁੱਠੀ	epithet
ਸੁੱਠੀ ਕਰਮ	P.N. of a sect	• ਸੁੱਠੀ	

ੳ

ੳਵੀ	cripple	• ੳਵੀ	pacification
ੳਵੀ	a day and a night, twenty-four hours	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	highest peace
ੳਵੀ	P.N. of a place	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	Santaraksita (P.N.)
ੳਵੀ	P.N. of a person	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	Santideva (P.N.)
ੳਵੀ	the worse (i.e. of a better and a worse)	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	P.N. of a sect
ੳਵੀ	foot (Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ	one; someone; something; a, an
ੳਵੀ	servant; service (Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	the pure land
ੳਵੀ	mouth; face (Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ	agriculture, field work
ੳਵੀ	number, numerical count (Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	to be ground into fine pieces
ੳਵੀ	recitation (Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	in detail
ੳਵੀ	in the lifetime of (highly Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	in fine or great detail
ੳਵੀ	bequest, will (Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	savory, delicious
ੳਵੀ	to accept; to admit (Hon.)	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	to call, to say, to name, to ask, to tell (Hon.)
ੳਵੀ	(mental) stabilization, <u>samatha</u>	• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	to enter (Hon.)
		• ੳਵੀ ਕਰਮ	to discourage, to depress

बुद्ध	p. of बु	बुद्धि	fut. of बुद्ध
बिन्दु	very	बुद्धि	book; government; length (in contra- distinction to width)
बिन्दु	hatred	बुद्धि	
बिन्दु	thus; ". . . ."	बुद्धि	
बिन्दु	to like; to hold mentally	बुद्धि	the scripture and the doctrinal systems
बिन्दु	P.N. of a place	बुद्धि	young
बुद्ध	fut. of बुद्ध	बुद्धि	p. of बुद्ध
बुद्ध	other	बुद्धि	p. of बुद्ध
बुद्ध	the objective(s) or purpose or benefit of others	बुद्धि	p. of बुद्ध
बुद्ध	the other schools (i.e. the non Buddhist schools)	बुद्धि	four
बुद्ध	to shave	बुद्धि	forty-one
बुद्ध	base, basis, object	बुद्धि	like (adv.)
बुद्ध	basis, support	बुद्धि	lamp
बुद्ध	from the base, from the bottom, from the rudiments	बुद्धि	to stay (Hon.)
बुद्ध	fut. of बुद्ध	बुद्धि	throne (Hon.)
बुद्ध	to take as the basis, to base on	बुद्धि	dwelling place (Hon.)
बुद्ध	native place; place of permanent resi- dence	बुद्धि	living quarters (Hon.)
बुद्ध	bow	बुद्धि	to take (Hon.)
		बुद्धि	custom; system (Hon.)
		बुद्धि	to make, to construct; to wake up (Hon.)

ཐོབ་པ་	worth, value	• ཐོབ་པ་(པ་)	v. to tolerate, to be patient with, to bear
ཐོབ་པོ་	good	• ཐོབ་པོ་	
ཐོབ་པ་	fut. of ཐོབ་	• ཐོབ་པ་	patience
ཐོབ་པ་	to be drunk	• ཐོབ་པ་ཐོབ་པ་(མེད་པ་)	(un)bearable
ཐོབ་པ་	p. of ཐོབ་པ་	• ཐོབ་པ་	p. of ཐོབ་པ་
ཐོབ་པ་	to make, to invent, to fabricate	• ཐོབ་པ་	fut. of ཐོབ་པ་
ཐོབ་པ་ལ་	resembling, like	• ཐོབ་པ་ལ་	p. of ཐོབ་པ་

ཨ་

ཨ་	also	• ཨ་མི་མོ་ལྷ་མོ་ལོ་	<u>akanistra ghana</u>
ཨ་མི་མོ་	Urdu	• ཨ་མི་མོ་ལོ་	<u>vyutra</u>
ཨ་མི་མོ་	well!; well then!	• ཨ་མི་མོ་ལོ་	the clear light
ཨ་མི་མོ་	under, beneath; after	• ཨ་མི་མོ་ལོ་	however, but
ཨ་མི་མོ་	lower	• ཨ་མི་མོ་ལོ་	deaf

ལ་

ལ་གཅིག་	one of a pair	• ལ་གཅིག་	good (or) bad; quality
ལ་གཅིག་	without one of a pair	• ལ་གཅིག་	good
ལ་མཚན་	wonder, miracle; surprise	• ལ་གཅིག་ལོ་	well
ལ་མཚན་པོ་	strange, peculiar, eccentric	• ལ་	also; even
ལ་གཅིག་ལོ་	It is better.	• ལ་ལྟར་	again

ལང་དཀར་དོན་	a true object, an ultimately real object; the ultimately real	ལོད་པམ་	to be depressed
ལང་དཀར་པ་	perfect, right; real	ལོད་ལྷོན་པ་	a madman
ལང་བ་	lighter	ལོད་ཚེས་མ་	to be satisfied
ལང་ལང་	again and again	ལོད་འོང་བྱམས་པ་	"affectionate love"
ལང་གསལ་ས་	Sanjiva (hell)	ལོད་ས་ལྷོད་པ་	to fix the thought, to place the thought
ལན་	upwards from . . . on	ལོད་ཤེས་	mental consciousness
ལན་ཚད་	from . . . on; from . . . up	ལོན་	to be; "aux. verb"
ལན་པ་	other	ལོན་ནམ་ཡང་	but, nonetheless
ལན་པག་	part; limb; specific.	ལོན་ཚད་ཡོག་	whatever . . . there are
ལམ་ལྷན་	father and son (I.e. master-disciple) (Hon.)	ལུག་	period of time, length of time
ལར་	up	ལུག་ལྱང་ལྱང་	brief, for a short while
ལར་རྒྱས་	extension; progress, improvement	ལུག་རྒྱང་པོ་	a long time
ལར་རྒྱས་པམ་ ལེབས་	to rise gradually; to rise through the <u>cursus honorum</u>	ལུམ་	country, area; object; <u>cognitum</u>
ལི་གེ་	letter; alphabet	ལོ་ཤེས་	<u>gnosis</u>
ལི་དྲགས་	<u>pretas</u>	ལོ་ཤེས་ལྱི་ཚོགས་	accumulation of <u>gnoses</u>
ལི་ཚེ་	soap	ལོ་ཤེས་འོད་	P.N. of a person
ལི་ག་ཚ་	textbook; file (see note Lesson 2)	ལོ་ར་པ་	P.N. of a place
ལིད་	mind	ལོ་བྱུད་	things, belongings
ལིད་ཚེས་	to trust in; to have confidence in	ལོང་	to come
ལིད་བརྟན་	confidence, trust	ལོང་ཡིན་	to come or not
ལིད་དུ་འོང་བ་	désirable, attractive	ལོངས་སྒྲིགས་	complete, finished
		ལོངས་སྒྲིགས་ལྷན་ལྷན་	to abridge; to bring together
		ལོངས་སྒྲིགས་པ་	to be finished, to be perfected, to be consummated

ཡོངས་སུ་ཚེང་བ་	to be completed, to be fulfilled	གཡམས་	right
ཡོད་པ་	to be	གཡུག་པའི་གཞི་	to throw or cast aside, to disregard
ཡོད་པ་འདྲ་	it seems, probably	གཡོང་བ་	to be distracted
ཡོད་མེད་	whether or not	གཡོངས་	p. of གཡོང་
ཡོད་ཚེད་	whatever exists	གཡོ་དགོ་རྒྱུད་	P.N. of a person
ཡོད་སྐབས་	story, news	གཡོ་(མ)	<u>v.</u> to move, to be moved
ཡོན་ཏན་	good qualities, virtues; qualities	གཡོ་བ་	<u>adj.</u> mobile
ཡོན་ཏན་མེད་	Gunaprabha (P.N.)	གཡོ་བ་	<u>n.</u> motion
ཡོན་པ་	donor, supporter, patron	གཡོ་བ་	to cover up, to put on
ཡོན་པ་	to sway	གཡོ་བ་པོ་	servant; attendant
གཡང་ས་	precipice; abyss, chasm	གཡོ་བ་ལྷན་	servant
		གཡོ་བ་ས་	p. of གཡོ་བ་
		གཡོ་བ་	left

རྒྱ

རྒྱ་རྒྱུ་ལྷན་	Ratnaraksita (P.N.)	རྒྱ་ལྷན་	according to one's own inclination
རྒྱ་ལྷན་ལྷན་	Ratnakara (P.N.)	རྒྱ་ལྷན་ལྷན་	to be able, to take care of oneself
རྒྱ་(མ)	to get, to obtain	རྒྱ་ལྷན་ལྷན་	autocommentary
རྒྱ་	brass	རྒྱ་ལྷན་	Svatantrika (Madhyamika)
རྒྱ་ས་པ་	rough; gross	རྒྱ་ལྷན་	oneself
རྒྱ་ས་ལྷན་	roughly	རྒྱ་ལྷན་	one's own objective, purpose, benefit
རྒྱ་	self (reflexive and intensive pn.)	རྒྱ་ལྷན་	our own schools (i.e. the Buddhist schools)
རྒྱ་རྒྱུ་ལྷན་ལྷན་	existent as an independent substantive	རྒྱ་ལྷན་	

རང་བཙལ་སྲུ་	according to its (their) natural condition; as is natural	རྟོགས་ལམ་	way of reason, logic
རང་དབང་	independence	རྟོགས་ཕྱིན་	duration, length (of time)
རང་བཞིན་	self-existent nature.	རྟོགས་ལ་	during (prep. with gen.), while, for a period of
རང་བཞིན་གྱི་ས་	empty or devoid of self-existent nature.	རྟོག་ཚེན་བཟང་པོ་	P.N. of a person
རྟོག་པོ་	to belong to one	རྟོག་ཕྱིན་	price
རྟོག་པོ་	very	རྟོག་པོ་ཚེ་	Rinpoche, a title of respect (see Lesson 1, note 1); precious (as as word)
རྟོག་པོ་རྒྱལ་པར་	to distinguish	རྟོག་གྱིས་	gradually, by steps, by degrees
རྟོག་པོ་ལྷན་པོ་	a monk or nun	རྟོག་པོ་	step, stage, degree
རྟོག་པོ་	long hair; something torn or ripped	རྟོག་པོ་བཞིན་ཕྱིན་	progressively, in sequence; gradually
རྟོག་པོ་	Mahatapana (hell)	རྟོག་པོ་བཞིན་	progressively in sequence; gradually
རྟོག་པོ་	mountain, hill	རྟོག་པོ་	to be fitting, to be suitable
རྟོག་པོ་དཀར་ལྗང་	P.N. of a place	རྟོག་པོ་	(anatomical)bone, bone
རྟོག་པོ་དགེ་ལུགས་	P.N. of a Tibetan religious sect	རྟོག་པོ་	a couple; a few
རྟོག་པོ་	Mt. Sumeru, the cosmic mountain	རྟོག་པོ་	expectation; reliance upon
རྟོག་པོ་	kind, type, class	རྟོག་པོ་	to rely upon
རྟོག་པོ་འབྲུན་ལྟེན་	to make comparable, to compare	རྟོག་པོ་	to rely on, to expect
རྟོག་པོ་ལ་	logical reasons; reasoning	རྟོག་པོ་	turn, alteration
རྟོག་པོ་ཚོལ་ས་	The Six Logical Works (of Nagarjuna).	རྟོག་པོ་	in turn, by turn
རྟོག་པོ་འཕྲོད་པའི་རྟོག་པོ་	to break off the continuum of the seemingly identical object	རྟོག་པོ་	each
རྟོག་པོ་འཕྲོད་པའི་རྟོག་པོ་	one of the four grades of geshe	རྟོག་པོ་	to touch
		རྟོག་པོ་	is "aux. verb"

to receive a text-translation

རྟེན་འགའ་	some; sometimes	• རྟེན་འགའ་པ་	musician
རྟེན་སྲུང་	aid, assistance	• རྟེན་	moisture
རྟོག་ཅིང་	roughly	• རྟོག་	wind, air; vital air
2.			
པ་ཁ་	just before, on the point of n. the apex of a mountain pass	• པ་ཁ་ཐོན་	notes on the <u>Lam Rim</u>
པ་གཤེས་	hand print; foot print (of animals)	• པ་ཁ་པོད་	immediately, at once
པ་གཏུམ་	mutilated arms or hands or fingers	• པ་ཁ་ལྷོ་པ་	system; custom
པ་ག་པ་	hand	• པ་ཁ་	work; act, action, deed; <u>karma</u> ; ritual action
པ་གས་	yes; also an honorific enclitic used principally with proper names.	• པ་ཁ་ག་	work
པ་ན་	answer, response; message	• པ་ཁ་འགན་	responsibility for the activities or functions
པ་ན་མང་པོ་	often; many times	• པ་ཁ་ལྷོ་རྟེན་འགྲུབ་	to go away from
པ་ན་གྲངས་	number of times	• པ་ཁ་རྟེན་སྲུང་	assistant
པ་ན་ཚེ་	Lantsha	• པ་ཁ་	sheep
པ་པ་	to say, to state	• པ་ཁ་སྲུང་	way, manner; system
པ་མ་	path, road, way	• པ་ཁ་སྲུང་འགྲུབ་	follower
པ་མ་ཁ་	road, highway	• པ་ཁ་སྲུང་ལྷོ་པ་	system, custom
པ་མ་གྱི་བདེན་པ་	the truth of path	• པ་ཁ་	scripture; text-transmission; handle
པ་མ་ལྔ་	the five paths; the fivefold path	• པ་ཁ་དང་རྟེན་སྲུང་པ་	scripture and reason
པ་མ་འགྲུབ་	Title of a book	• པ་ཁ་བསྟན་པ་	prophecy
པ་མ་རྟེན་	Title of a book	• པ་ཁ་པ་	area, region
		• པ་ཁ་མ་འགྲུབ་	neutral; indeterminate
		• པ་ཁ་ལྷོ་	to receive a text-transmission

ཡུང་བཞི་	<u>Caturagama</u>	ཡོ་རྒྱུད་	younger or junior translator
ཡུང་ཡིག་པ་	scripture and reason	ཡོ་རྒྱུད་རྒྱུད་སྐབས་	at a young age
ཡུལ་	body	ཡོ་རྒྱུད་རྒྱུད་བས་	from an early age
ཡུལ་རྩལ་	body	ཡོ་རྩལ་	elder or senior translator (if in contradistinction to a younger or junior); great translator
ཡུལ་རྩལ་ཆེ་བ་	great bodily size	ཡོ་དོག་	crops; harvest
ཡུལ་པ་	body	ཡོ་རྩལ་	yearly, annually
ཡུལ་ཆེ་བ་	size of body	ཡོ་ཡན་རྩལ་པོ་	a <u>lotsawa</u> and a great <u>pandit</u>
ཡུལ་ལྷོ་ག་	life	ཡོ་མ་	leaf
ཡུལ་ལྷོ་ག་ཡ་	injury to life and limb	ཡོ་རྩལ་པ་	<u>lotsawa</u> ; translator
ཡོ་ཡོ་	laziness	ཡོ་ག་རྩལ་	wrong view
ཡེག་པ་རྩལ་ལྷོ་ག་	Bhavaviveka (P.N.)	ཡོ་ག་པ་	wrong, perverse
ཡེག་པ་རྩལ་	quality; good and evil	ཡོ་ག་རྩལ་	to plan to return
ཡེག་པ་རྩལ་པ་	depending upon the quality of	ཡོ་ག་ག་ཡོ་མ་	sexual misconduct
ཡེག་པ་ཡོ་	well	ཡོང་འགྲིད་	one who leads a blind person
ཡེག་	to take	ཡོང་བ་	blind
ཡོ་	year	ཡོངས་ལྷོ་ག་	material resource; necessities and amenities
ཡོ་རྒྱུད་	number of years		
ཡོ་རྩལ་	history; <u>res gestae</u>		
ཡོ་ག་རྩལ་ཡོ་	at the end of one year, with the passage of a year		

अ

अ	flesh, meat	• अस्मात् शक्य	knowledge ob- scurations
अशुक्रि	Shakyasu (P.N.)	• अस्मात् (अ)	to know, to understand; to cognize
अशुक्रि	Sakyamuni	• अस्मात्	object of cognition; a knowable
अशुक्रि	just, merely, only	• अस्मात्	introspective awareness
अशुक्रि	Sariputara	• अस्मात्	to the extent of one's understanding
अशुक्रि	P. N. of a place; nose (Hon.)	• अस्मात्	understanding, wisdom
अशुक्रि	epithet	• अस्मात्	"the good friend", <u>kalyanamitra</u> , geshe
अशुक्रि	P.N. of a subject	• अस्मात्	P. N. of a person
अशुक्रि	fut. and p. of n. east, eastern	• अस्मात्	to lose
अशुक्रि	eastern	• अस्मात्	wing
अशुक्रि	a very great . . .	• अस्मात्	to be able to contain; to fit
अशुक्रि	to die	• अस्मात्	fut. and p. of अस्मात्
अशुक्रि	near to dying	• अस्मात्	exposition and practice
अशुक्रि	Silamanju (P.N.)	• अस्मात्	to transmit and explain a text (Hon.)
अशुक्रि	a, an	• अस्मात्	p. of अस्मात्
अशुक्रि	tree	• अस्मात्	to check, to check over
अशुक्रि	twig, a small piece of wood	• अस्मात्	
अशुक्रि	extremely, very	• अस्मात्	
अशुक्रि	very, extremely	• अस्मात्	
अशुक्रि	suppleness (as for work); dexterity	• अस्मात्	
अशुक्रि	power, force, strength	• अस्मात्	
अशुक्रि	Prajnaparamita	• अस्मात्	
अशुक्रि	<u>The Prajanaparamita sutra</u>	• अस्मात्	

न.

न.	place; ground; earth.	सुमसु.प.	title of a grammatical work; thirty
न.सु.प.	P.N. of a sect	सुम.सु.प.	three thousand three hundred
न.सु.प.सु.प.	not completely without a place of mention	सु.सु.प.सु.प.सु.प.	Serwa, 'Bras dpung, and Dga' ldan
न.सु.प.	the ten levels	सु.प.	P.N. of a monastery
न.सु.	area, territory, land	सु.प.सु.प.	P.N. of a monastic college belonging to Serwa
न.सु.	earth and water; environment	सु.सु.प.	mind
न.सु.सु.प.	unsuitable surrounding or environment	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	to think
न.सु.सु.प.सु.प.	the great former Sakyapas	सु.सु.प.सु.प.सु.प.सु.प.	the mind to enlightenment
न.सु.सु.प.	from . . . (i.e. of a person)	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	worry, solicitude
न.सु.सु.प.	seed	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	the mental continuum
न.सु.सु.प.	field	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	living creature(s), sentient being(s)
न.सु.सु.प.	tomorrow	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	mental fixation (i.e. on an object)
न.सु.सु.प.	Buddha	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	mental action
न.सु.सु.प.सु.प.	Buddhist	सु.सु.प.सु.प.सु.प.	Cittamatra, "mind-only" school
न.सु.सु.प.सु.प.सु.प.	Buddhapalita (P.N.)	सु.सु.प.सु.प.सु.प.सु.प.	stinginess, miserliness
न.सु.	frost	सु.सु.प.	yellow
न.सु.सु.प.सु.प.	the seven probationers	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	hail
सु.सु.प.	whoever	सु.सु.प.	to clear away; to remove
सु.सु.प.	to close up, to stop up; to erase	सु.सु.प.	tooth
सु.सु.प.	by whom	सु.सु.प.	thirty-two
सु.सु.प.सु.प.	the extremities (i. e. hands and feet)	सु.सु.प.सु.प.	

འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	Atata (hell)	• འཏཏ་	to wake up, to arouse; to beg
འཏཏ་མེད་	<u>pratimohsa</u> ; individual emancipation	• འཏཏ་མེད་	to train, to study
= འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་		• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	school
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	<u>Pratimoksasutra</u>	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	discipleship-lineage
འཏཏ་མེད་	spy	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	studies
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	thirty-seven	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	to study
འཏཏ་མེད་	individual, each	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	master, master teacher, <u>acarya</u>
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	ordinary individual (in contradistinction to an <u>aryan</u> individual)	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	studies
འཏཏ་མེད་	etc.	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	to study
འཏཏ་མེད་	gone	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	disciple, pupil
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	daughter; girl (Hon.)	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	<u>mantra</u> , <u>tantra</u>
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	the world summit	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	secret preceptor
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	protection	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	Guhyasamaja, Sambhara, and Yamantaka
འཏཏ་མེད་	to protect; to safeguard; to observe	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	
འཏཏ་མེད་	to burn	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	fut. of འཏཏ་མེད་
འཏཏ་མེད་	life	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	to hear, to listen (Hon.)
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	killing	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	listening (i.e. learning) and practice (Hon.)
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	living creatures	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	
འཏཏ་མེད་	to straighten	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	to learn and practice (Hon.)
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	P.N. of a person	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	newly
འཏཏ་མེད་	system	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	new
འཏཏ་མེད་	easy	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	clear
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	for the sake of	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	clearly
འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	again	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་མེད་	to say (Hon.)
འཏཏ་མེད་	to arrive, to reach	• འཏཏ་མེད་མེད་	

གསུང་གློ་མ་	talk, conversation (Hon.)	བསམ་བཤི་ལས་	deliberative action
གསུང་ཚོམ་གཞུང་	to give religious instruction, to teach religion (Hon.)	བསམ་ལྡན་	thought
གསུང་བཤད་གཞུང་	to lecture on, to give explanation	བསམ་ལྡན་བཤད་ཚདྲིན་	whatever one thinks about
གསུངས་	p. of གསུང་	བསམ་ལྡན་འཇུག་	evil thought and action
གསུམ་	three	བསམ་ལས་	P.N. of a monastery
གསུམ་གྲ་	all three	བསམས་	p. of སེམས་
གསེར་	gold	བསམ་	p. of སེམ་
གསེར་མཁའ་	gold expert	བསམ་བཤེན་	fut. of ལྟུབ་
གསོ་	to recover, to take care of, nourish, feed	བསམ་བསམ་	p. of ལྟུབ་
གསོ་སྤྱོད་	posada; gso sbyong (see note Lesson 3)	བསོད་ནམས་	merit
གསོ་བ་	to accumulate	བསོད་ནམས་སྤྱོད་	accumulation of merits
གསོད་	to murder, to kill	བསྐྱེད་	fut. of ལྟོད་
གསོད་ལ་	life	བསྐྱེདས་	p. of ལྟོད་
གསོལ་སྐྱེན་	medicine (Hon.)	བསྐྱེད་ལྟོད་ལས་	fut. of ལྟོད་
གསོས་	p. of གསོ་	བསྐྱེདས་	precepts which are kept; observances
བསམ་ག་	fut. of གསོ་བ་	བསྐྱེདས་	p. of ལྟོད་
བསམ་གས་	p. of གསོ་བ་	བསྐྱེད་གས་	fut. of ལྟོད་ག་
བསམ་དྲ་	p. of གསོད་	བསྐྱེད་སྤྱོད་	p. of ལྟོད་ག་
བསམ་ལ་	fut. of སེམས་	བསྐྱེད་	alloy; impurity
བསམ་ལྡན་ལྡན་	inconceivable, unthinkable	བསྐྱེད་	fut. of ལྟོད་
བསམ་ལྡན་ལྡན་	meditative trance, meditative absorption	བསྐྱེདས་	p. of ལྟོད་
བསམ་ལ་	thought, attitude	བསྐྱེད་བཤེན་	fut. of ལྟོད་ལྡན་
		བསྐྱེད་བསམ་	the three disciplines
		བསྐྱེད་བསམ་	p. of ལྟོད་ལྡན་
		བསྐྱེད་བསམ་	fut. of ལྟོད་ལྡན་
		བསྐྱེད་བསམ་	p. of ལྟོད་ལྡན་

ད

ད་ཅང་	very	དྲེ་བཟོ་བ་	image maker
ད་མ་གོ་བ་	(not) to know, (not) to understand	དྲེ་རམ་པ་	one of the four grades of geshe
ད་ལམ་	almost	དྲེ་ས་	Lhasa (P.N.)
ད་ལས་པ་	to be astonished at	དྲེ་ག་	excess
དྲན་གཞི་	P.N.	དྲེ་ག་ཡམོད་	transcendental vision; <u>vipasyana</u>
དྲེ་པ་པ་	whole; globular	དྲེ་ག་པ་	superior; in excess of; wind
དྲེ་	god, diety; <u>deva</u> , divinity; the divine.	དྲེ་ག་པ་འི་.....	superior . . .
དྲེ་ཁང་	chapel, temple	དྲེ་ག་པ་རྒྱ་དུ་	in particular
དྲེ་གནས་མམ་	the heaven of the thirty-three	དྲེ་ག་མ་	remainder
ཅེ་རྒྱ་གསུམ་	P.N. of a place	དྲེ་ག་བསམ་རྒྱུ་	"pure superior thought" or "attitude"
དྲེ་ལྷ་	having the sevenfold. <u>bka' gtams doctrine</u> and dieties	དྲེ་	impurity
དྲེ་ཕོ་མོ་འི་གཞུང་	P.N. of a person	དྲེ་བླ་མ་གྱུ་	together (H)
དྲེ་ལྷ་པ་པ་	icon painter	དྲེ་བླ་མ་གྱི་	together with
དྲེ་ལྷ་མ་	"Divine Guru", (Guru King)	དྲེ་བླ་མ་དུ་	together (H)
དྲེ་མ་ལྷ་	<u>asura</u> , antigods, titans	དྲེ་ལྷ་འཕྲེང་(ཅི་)	to fall
		དྲེ་ལྷ་ལྷ་པ་	spontaneous
		དྲེ་ལྷ་ལྷ་	loose (ly)

འ

འ་ཅང་ཅང་	of course, indeed	འ་འཛིན་	Atisa (P.N.)
འ་མཚོ་ག་	ear	འ་ལྷོ་	well then
འ་ལྷ་ལྷ་པ་	Huhuva (hell)	འ་ལྷོ་	old woman, grand-mother

मा.मा.	mother	.	मा.मा.	<u>acarya</u>
मा.मा.	number	.	उत्पल	Utpala (hell)
मा.मा.मा.	numerical order	.	मा.मा.मा.	is there?
	(i.e. 1st, 2nd, 3rd	.	मा.मा.मा.	doctor
	etc.)	.		

Inf.	Pres.	Pt.	Imp.	Inf.	Pres.	Pt.	Imp.
(to wrap)				(to dry)			
(to stir up)				(to show st.)			
(to request)				(to miss)			
(to lose)				(to resist)			
(to wash)				(to send)			
(to read)				(to road)			
(to steal)				(to appoint)			
(to die out)				(to call together)			
(to stretch out)				(to surround)			
(to be born)				(to toil)			
(to fill up)				(to take care of)			

List of frequent verbs of three and four roots

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to protect from)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to take)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to repeat)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to be carried out)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to reduce)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to arrive at)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to give up)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to be angry)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to produce)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to lead)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to take to)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to hire)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to move)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to stop)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to put on)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to fill up)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to banish)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to cover)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to carry)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to single out)							
ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି (to wander around)	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସିବି	ଅଭ୍ୟାସି	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ	ଅଭିଧରୁ
(to load on)							

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ବକ୍ଷା (to bend)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to count)	ଗଣା ଗଣା	ଗଣା	ଗଣା
ବଧା (to kill)	ବଧାୟ ବଧାୟ	ବଧା	ବଧା	ବକ୍ଷା (to cross)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବର୍ତ୍ତା (to pull out)	ବର୍ତ୍ତାୟ ବର୍ତ୍ତାୟ	ବର୍ତ୍ତା	ବର୍ତ୍ତା	ବକ୍ଷା (to fill)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବର୍ତ୍ତା (to arrange)	ବର୍ତ୍ତାୟ ବର୍ତ୍ତାୟ	ବର୍ତ୍ତା	ବର୍ତ୍ତା	ବକ୍ଷା (to hit)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବକ୍ଷା (to spread)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to run)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବକ୍ଷା (to kill)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to wait)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବକ୍ଷା (to unfetter)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to move)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବକ୍ଷା (to laugh)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to meditate)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବକ୍ଷା (to divide)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to change)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବକ୍ଷା (to postpone)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to declare)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା
ବକ୍ଷା (to do)	ବକ୍ଷାୟ ବକ୍ଷାୟ	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା	ବକ୍ଷା (to remove from)	କ୍ଷା କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା	କ୍ଷା

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to cut)				(to hide oneself)			
କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to twist)				(to grab)			
କାଟୁବ	କାଟୁବ	କାଟୁବ	କାଟୁବ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to tame)				(to exchange)			
କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to hold)				(to say)			
କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to chew)				(to lie down)			
କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	କାଟନ୍	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to tie up)				(to buy)			
କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to turn around)				(to listen)			
କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to make)				(to age) "used only of things and not living creatures"			
କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to ask to take care of)				(to be muddy)			
କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to go)				(to reach out)			
କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	କାଟୁ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ	ଢାକ
(to jump)				(to level)			

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ସଢ଼ିବି (to lay down)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁବି (to cut)	ବାଜୁଅ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to topple over [a heap])	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to wrap)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to be sick)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to establish)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to lean against)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to weave; to ground)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to follow behind)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to gather together [the scattered])	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to be proud)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to drink)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to accuse falsely)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to salute respectfully)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to squash)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to investigate)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to send)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to trust)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to hand)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to be dependent upon)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ
ସଢ଼ିବି (to meet)	ଢ଼ିଅ	ସଢ଼ିଅଇ	ଢ଼ିଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ (to perfrprate)	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ	ବାଜୁଅଇ

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to look)				(to draw out)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to fold)				(to hang)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to show)				(to open)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to make dissolve into)				(to sow)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to make continuous)				(to choose)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to have recourse to)				(to instruct)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to embrace)				(to spread out a cover; to plan)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to depart to or from)				(to subdue)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to obtain)				(to lift up)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to be confused)				(to take out)			
ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟମ	ଦୃଶ୍ୟ
(to abandon)				(to chase)			

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	
	(to slap down; to clap)				(to be gathered together)		
འདྲེན་	དྲོན་	འདྲེན་དུ་	དྲོན་དུ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to rub)				(to ask)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to beat)				(to dig)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to stay)				(to drag)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	
	(to restrain)				(to mingle)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	
	(to gather together)				(to press down)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to reconcile)				(to add)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to total)				(to smell)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to compare)				(to prolong; to elongate)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to be pure)				(to hit)		
འདྲེན་	དྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	དྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་	འདྲེན་པ་	འདྲེན་པ་
	(to pass beyond)				(to eradicate)		

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ନିର୍ଦ୍ଦେଶ୍	ନିର୍ଦ୍ଦେଶା	ନିର୍ଦ୍ଦେଶନ୍	ନିର୍ଦ୍ଦେଶନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	
(to infer)				(to be defeated)			
ନିରୀକ୍ଷ୍	ନିରୀକ୍ଷା	ନିରୀକ୍ଷନ୍	ନିରୀକ୍ଷନ୍	ଅସୁଖ୍	ଅସୁଖା	ଅସୁଖା	ଅସୁଖା
(to examine)				(to meet with misfortune)			
ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to get rid of)				(to fly)			
ଜ୍ଵାଳାନ୍	ଜ୍ଵାଳାନ୍	ଜ୍ଵାଳାନ୍	ଜ୍ଵାଳାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to light; to increase)				(to be transferred)			
ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to pile up)				ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to sweep)				(to hold up in the air)			
ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to remove)				(to be met)			
ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to use)				(to be radiated)			
ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ହରାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to hand)				(to do)			
ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to shake)				(to smear)			
ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଘଟାନ୍	ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା
(to radiate)				(to take)			
ଅଧିକ୍	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା	ଅଧିକା				
(to shoot; to throw)							

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ଢେଁ (to ransom)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to divide)	ଭୁଞ୍ଜି	ଭୁଞ୍ଜି	ଭୁଞ୍ଜି
ଢେଁ (to pour)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to tear)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to hide)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to reduce)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to soak)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to seize)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to practise)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to descend)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to give)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to expel)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to make descend)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to call)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to offer)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to arise)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to erase)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to come)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to throw)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to avoid)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ
ଢେଁ (to take out)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ (to follow)	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ	ଢେଁ

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ଅସ୍ତ୍ୟ (to separate from)	ଅସ୍ତ୍ୟ	ସ୍ତ୍ୟ		ବୀର୍ତ୍ତି (to harm)	ବୀର୍ତ୍ତି	ବୀର୍ତ୍ତି	ବୀର୍ତ୍ତି
ଲିଖି (to write)	ଲିଖି	ଲିଖି	ଲିଖି	ବଳି (to strain)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to cut)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to bow down)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
ଫୁଲି (to flee)	ଫୁଲି	ଫୁଲି	ଫୁଲି	ବଳି (to search)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to experience)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to squeeze)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to dream)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to boil)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to plow)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to beat)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to abase)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to sell)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to be mad)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to debate)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to say)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to compose)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି
କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି (to play)	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	କ୍ଷୁଣ୍ଠି	ବଳି (to count)	ବଳି	ବଳି	ବଳି

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ସଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ସଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to build)				(to tangle)			
ସଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ସଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to stack)				(to climb)			
ସଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ସଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to sew)				(to come together)			
ସଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ସଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to bestow)				(to toll)			
ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to be satisfied)				(to put)			
ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to send of a person)				(to shave)			
ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to squeeze down)				(to measure)			
ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to disguise)				(to destroy)			
ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to pull up [as a curtain])				(to suck)			
ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to crush)				(to hit)			
ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବି	ଢ଼ିବିନି	ଢ଼ିବିନି
(to be finished)				(to make enter)			

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ਜਾਕਿੰਦਾਸ (to conquer)	ਜਾਕਿੰਦਾਸ	ਜਾਕਿੰਦਾਸ	ਜਾਕਿੰਦਾਸ	ਖਾਓ (to eat)	ਖਾਓ	ਖਾਓ	ਖਾਓ
ਘੋਲੋ (to melt)	ਘੋਲੋ	ਘੋਲੋ	ਘੋਲੋ	ਬਣੋ (to make)	ਬਣੋ	ਬਣੋ	ਬਣੋ
ਘੋਲੋ (to milk)	ਘੋਲੋ	ਘੋਲੋ	ਘੋਲੋ	ਬੋਠੋ (to recite)	ਬੋਠੋ	ਬੋਠੋ	ਬੋਠੋ
ਘੋਲੋ (to ride)	ਘੋਲੋ	ਘੋਲੋ	ਘੋਲੋ	ਬਦਲੋ (to reverse)	ਬਦਲੋ	ਬਦਲੋ	ਬਦਲੋ
ਘੁਲੋ (to fall)	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਬਦੋ (to lend; to borrow)	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ
ਘੁਲੋ (to pierce)	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਬਦੋ (to swing)	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ
ਘੁਲੋ (to hold)	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਬਦੋ (to be distracted)	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ
ਘੁਲੋ (to put in)	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਬਦੋ (to move)	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ
ਘੁਲੋ (to close)	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਬਦੋ (to cover)	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ
ਘੁਲੋ (to extend as a bowl for receiving)	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਬਦੋ (to inspire)	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ
ਘੁਲੋ (to abstain)	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਘੁਲੋ	ਬਦੋ (to wake up)	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ	ਬਦੋ

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ଅଥ' (to say)	ଅଥ'	ଅଥ'	ଅଥ'	ସମ୍ଭ୍ରାନ୍ତ' (to weep)	ସମ୍ଭ୍ରାନ୍ତ'	ସମ୍ଭ୍ରାନ୍ତ' (to weep)	ସମ୍ଭ୍ରାନ୍ତ'
ଏର' (to rise as the sun)	ଉଠର'	ଏର'		ସମ୍ପର' (to check)	ସମ୍ପର'	ସମ୍ପର' (to check)	ସମ୍ପର'
ସ୍ତ୍ରୀ' (to die)	ମୃତ୍ୟୁ'	ସ୍ତ୍ରୀ'		ହାତ୍ୟ' (to kill)	ହାତ୍ୟ'	ହାତ୍ୟ' (to kill)	ହାତ୍ୟ'
ହର' (to lose)	ଉଠର'	ହର'		ବାସ୍ତୁ' (to say)	ବାସ୍ତୁ'	ବାସ୍ତୁ' (to say)	ବାସ୍ତୁ'
ବାସ୍ତବ' (to split)	ବାସ୍ତବ'	ବାସ୍ତବ'	ବାସ୍ତବ'	ବାସ୍ତବ' (to heal; to nourish)	ବାସ୍ତବ'	ବାସ୍ତବ' (to heal; to nourish)	ବାସ୍ତବ'
ବାସ୍ତ' (to throw water)	ବାସ୍ତ'	ବାସ୍ତ'	ବାସ୍ତ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to accumulate)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to accumulate)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'
ସମ୍ପଦ' (to undam)	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to clear away)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to clear away)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'
ସମ୍ପଦ' (to explain)	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to repay)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to repay)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'
ସମ୍ପଦ' (to prepare)	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to think)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to think)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'
ସମ୍ପଦ' (to peel off)	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to dispel)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'	ସଂଗ୍ରହ' (to dispel)	ସଂଗ୍ରହ'
ସମ୍ପଦ' (to hand)	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ' (to welcome)	ସମ୍ପଦ'	ସମ୍ପଦ' (to welcome)	ସମ୍ପଦ'

Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.	Fut.	Pres.	Pf.	Imp.
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to annoy)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to mix)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to erase)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to burn)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to straighten)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to arouse)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to persevere in)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to influence for bad)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to make longer or more distant from)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to teach; to learn)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to protect)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to betray)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to churn)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to arrive)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ
ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to bask)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ (to return)	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଅଲୁକ୍ଷୁ	ଲୁକ୍ଷୁ

TB2.001.

Sopa, Geshe Lhundup

LECTURES ON TIBETAN RELIGIOUS
CULTURE
Part II

TB2.001.

University of Wisconsin-Madison
Laboratories for Recorded Instruction

